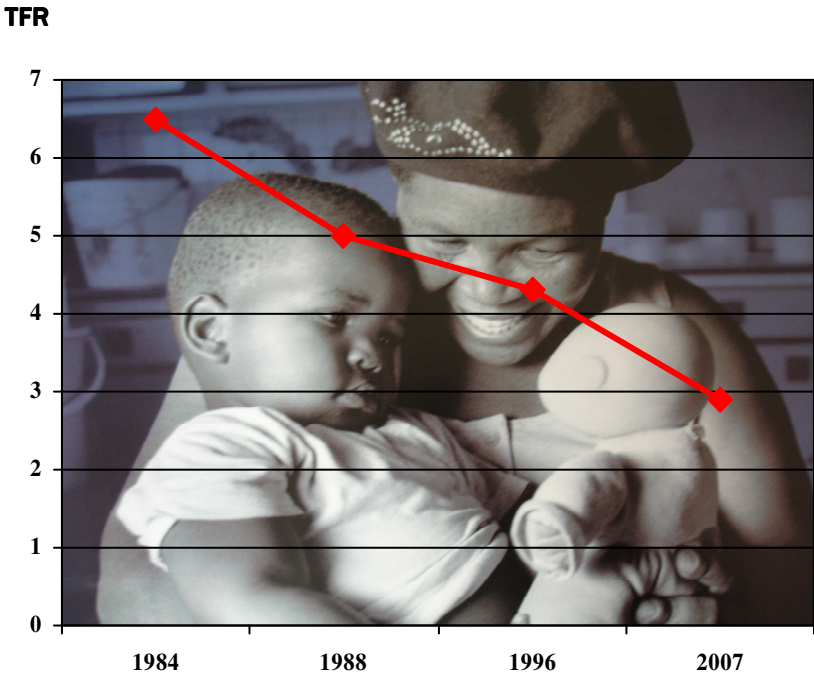




2007 Botswana Family Health Survey IV Report

**TOTAL FERTILITY RATE (TFR)
BOTSWANA FAMILY HEALTH SURVEYS
1984-2007**



CSO in Collaboration with UNICEF



2007 BOTSWANA FAMILY HEALTH SURVEY IV REPORT

Published by
Central Statistics Office
Private Bag 0024, Gaborone
Telephone: 3671300 Fax: 3952201
E-mail: csobots@gov.bw
Website: www.cso.gov.bw

Contact Unit: Demography
Telephone: 3671300

November 2009

COPYRIGHT RESERVED

Extracts may be published if
source is duly acknowledged

Preface

The Botswana Family Health Survey IV (BFHS IV) is the fourth in the series of the surveys of this nature. The first was conducted in 1984, the second in 1988, the third in 1996 and the current in 2007. Funding for the BFHS IV was through Botswana Government and UNICEF.

The Botswana Family Health Survey IV (BFHS IV) was conducted in September 2007- January 2008 by the Central Statistics Office in close collaboration with UNICEF. The Multiple Indicator Cluster Survey (MICS) was combined with the BFHS IV because of the similarity of the indicators modules. Four questionnaires were administered namely the Household Questionnaire, Female Questionnaire (administered to females aged 12-49), Male Questionnaire (administered to males aged 12-49) and the Under 5 Questionnaire.

This survey was different from the past BFHSs because males were also included and questions on their sexuality and contraception knowledge and use, fertility preferences among others were asked. There were also questions designed to capture information regarding well-being, survivorship, and orphan hood of children under the age of eighteen. One other important feature of BFHS IV is that for the first time Information on adult weight and height for calculation of Body Mass Indices (BMI) of the nation was collected.

The Report has an executive summary followed by nine chapters namely. (i) Background, (ii) Survey Methodology (iii) Household and Population Characteristics, (vi) Fertility, (v) Mortality, (vi) Family Planning, (vii) Maternal and Child Health Care, (viii) Nutritional Status and (ix) Body Mass Index. Indicators such as availability of safe water and sanitation, nutrition status of children under five years old, breastfeeding, immunization coverage and salt iodization are also included. This report is available on CSO's website (www.cso.gov.bw) for reference to stakeholders.

We hope this report will provide useful information for the monitoring and evaluation of demographic trends, infants and child mortality, Maternal and Child Health and Family Planning programmes and Reproductive Health in Botswana.



A. N. Majelantle
GOVERNMENT STATISTICIAN

Acknowledgement

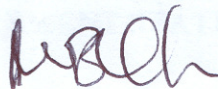
The undertaking of a nationwide household survey demands coordinated performance of several activities. Outputs of some activities are inputs of others. Thus, different people were involved with different survey activities, either simultaneously or at different times of the duration of the exercise.

Therefore, for effective supervision and co-ordination of activities, concerted and coordinated efforts among individuals involved, is of vital importance for a successful outcome. Considerable success has been realised in the execution of various survey activities, indicating achievement in coordination and cooperation at all levels.

I will therefore like to take this opportunity to express appreciation to all those who participated in this Botswana Family Health Survey IV (BFHS IV).

I am particularly grateful to the following:-

- **UNICEF (Botswana Office):** for their valuable and continuous participation in the reference committee meetings, financial support and assistance in data management.
- **Members of BFHS IV Reference and Technical Working Committees** (as listed in the list of participants in this report): for their commitment to the successful completion of the survey from planning stage to dissemination of the results.
- **All the Enumerators, Supervisors, Drivers and Data Entry Operators** who worked tirelessly collecting and processing the information required, for without their honest efforts we would not boast of successful survey.
- **Members of the Public:** for their assistance and patience in providing the information required without which the survey undertaking would have been inadequate.
- **CTO** for providing transport and drivers for assisting in the field work enumeration.
- And, last but not least, **all staff of the CSO;** the typists, the personal secretaries, the administrators, supply officers and professionals for the dedication and thoroughness in their application to the entire exercise; from its planning stage to its conclusion.



M. P. Kerekang
DEPUTY GOVERNMENT STATISTICIAN

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREFACE.....	I
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT.....	II
TABLE OF CONTENTS	III
LIST OF ACRONYMS	VI
LIST OF TABLES	VII
LIST OF FIGURES	XII
BOTSWANA MAP	XIII
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY	1
SUMMARY INDICATORS: BFHS I TO IV	4
CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION, SURVEY BACKGROUND	7
1.1 Geography, Climate and Economy	7
1.2 Population.....	9
1.3 Population Policies and Programmes	9
1.4 Objectives of BFHS IV	10
CHAPTER 2: SURVEY METHODOLOGY	11
2.1 Sampling Frame.....	11
2.2 Stratification	11
2.3 Sample Design.....	11
2.4 Questionnaires	12
2.5 Field work and Data processing	12
2.6 Response Rates	12
CHAPTER 3: CHARACTERISTICS OF THE HOUSEHOLD POPULATION	14
3.1 Age and Sex Composition.....	14
3.2 Eligible Respondents Characteristics	17
3.3 Orphanhood and Living Arrangement of Children Aged 0 – 17	20
3.4 Household Characteristics	21
3.4.1 Sources of Water Supply	21
3.4.2 Collection of Water from Source	22

3.4.3 Time Taken to Source of Water and Back	22
3.4.4 Sanitation	23
3.4.5 Sanitation and Drinking Water	26
3.4.6 Fuel use in Households	27
3.5 Refuse Disposal	28
CHAPTER 4: FERTILITY	29
4.1 Introduction	29
4.2 Current Pregnancy	29
4.3 Children Ever Born.....	31
4.4 Teenage Fertility.....	33
CHAPTER 5: MORTALITY	35
5.1 Infant and Child Mortality.....	35
CHAPTER 6: FAMILY PLANNING	36
6.1 Introduction	36
6.2 Knowledge of Family Planning Methods.....	36
6.3 Ever Use of Family Planning Methods	39
6.4 Current use of Family Planning Methods	40
6.5 Sources of Family Planning Methods	43
6.6 Non-use of Family Planning Methods	43
6.7 Intention to use Family Planning Methods	44
6.8 Trends in Family Planning Knowledge and Use.....	45
CHAPTER 7: MATERNAL AND CHILD CARE	47
7.1 Pregnancy Care.....	47
7.1.1 Antenatal Care Coverage	47
7.1.2 Tetanus Toxoid	48
7.2 Delivery Care.....	49
7.2.1 Place of Delivery.....	49
7.2.2 Assistance at Delivery.....	49
7.3 Child Care.....	50
7.3.1 Immunisation of Children	50
7.3.2 Diarrhoea.....	51
7.3.3 Disposal of Children's Stools	53

7.3.4 Severe Cough or Difficulty in Breathing Treatment.....	54
7.3.5 Fever Prevalence and treatment	55
7.3.6 Ear Pain or Discharge and Treatment	56
CHAPTER 8: NUTRITIONAL STATUS	58
8.1 Anthropometric Measurements	58
8.2 Low Birth Weight.....	60
8.3 Breastfeeding	61
8.3.1 Initiation of Breastfeeding	62
8.3.2 Breastfeeding	63
8.4 Micronutrients	65
8.4.1 Vitamin A intake.....	65
8.4.2 Iodised Salt.....	66
8.5 Child Protection.....	67
8.5.1 Birth Registration.....	67
8.5.2 Basic Education	68
8.5.3 Early Childhood Education.....	68
8.5.4 Primary Education	69
CHAPTER 9: BODY MASS INDEX (BMI)	70
9.1 Introduction	70
9.2 Obesity Status	71
APPENDIX A: STATISTICAL TABLES	76
APPENDIX B: SURVEY METHODOLOGY	100
APPENDIX C: SAMPLING ERROR.....	108
APPENDIX D: LIST OF REFERENCE AND TWG MEMBERS	114
APPENDIX E: QUESTIONNAIRES (HOUSEHOLDS/ CHILDREN/ FEMALE/MALE)	117

List of Acronyms

AIDS	Acquired Immuno-deficiency Syndrome
ANC	Antenatal Clinics
ARI	Acute Respiratory Infections
ASFR	Age Specific Fertility Rate
BCG	Bacilli Calmette Guérine
BFHS	Botswana Family Health Survey
BMI	Body Mass Index
BOTUSA	Partnership between Botswana and the United States of America Governments
CMR	Child Mortality Rate
CDC	Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, Georgia
CEB	Children Ever Born
CMR	Child Mortality Rate
CSO	Central Statistics Office
DPT	Diphtheria Pertussis and Tetanus
EPI	Expanded Programme on Immunisation
GDP	Gross Domestic Product
HIES	Household Income and Expenditure Survey
HIV	Human Immunodeficiency Virus
IHS	Institute of Health Sciences
IMR	Infant Mortality Rate
IUCD	Intra Uterine Contraceptive Device
MDG's	Millennium Development Goals
MOH	Ministry of Health
MICS	Multiple Indicator Cluster Survey
NACA	National AIDS Coordinating Agency
NAR	Net Attendance Ratio
NCHS	National Centre for Health Statistics
NDP	National Development Plan
OPV	Oral Polio Vaccine
ORS	Oral Rehydration Solution
ORT	Oral Rehydration Treatment
STD	Sexually Transmitted Diseases
TFR	Total Fertility Rate
UB	University Of Botswana
UNDP	United Nations Development Programme
UNICEF	United Nations Children's Fund
VIP	Ventilated Improved Pit Latrine
WFFC	World Fit For Children
WHO	World Health Organization

List of Tables

Table 2. 1: Number of households by result of household interviews and response rates, Botswana, 2007	13
Table 3. 1: Percentage distribution of the sample population age groups, residence and sex, Botswana, 2007	14
Table 3. 2: Percentage distribution of the sample population by district and sex, Botswana, 2007	15
Table 3.3: Percentage distribution of households by selected characteristics, Botswana, 2007 ..	17
Table 3. 4: Percentage distribution of eligible respondents by age-groups, place of residence, educational level and marital status; Botswana, 2007	18
Table 3. 5: Percentage distribution of children under five years of age by sex, place of residence, age-group and educational level of caretaker/mother, Botswana, 2007	19
Table 3. 6: Percentage children's living arrangements and orphanhood, Botswana 2007	20
Table 3. 7: Percentage distribution of household population according to main source of drinking water and percentage of household members using improved drinking water sources, Botswana, 2007	21
Table 3. 8: Percentage distribution of households according to the person collecting water used in the household, Botswana, 2007	22
Table 3. 9: Percentage distribution of households according to time to go to source of drinking water, get water and return, and mean time to source of drinking water, Botswana, 2007.....	23
Table 3. 10: Percentage distribution of household population according to type of toilet used by the household and the percentage of household members using sanitary means of excreta disposal, Botswana, 2007	24
Table 3. 11: Percentage distribution of household population according to type of toilet used by the household and the percentage of household members using sanitary means of excreta disposal, Botswana, 2007	25
Table 3. 12: Percentage distribution of households according to type of cooking fuel, and percentage of households used solid fuels for cooking, Botswana 2007	27
Table 3. 13: Percentage of households using solid fuels for cooking by type of stove or fire, Botswana, 2007	28
Table 3. 14: Percentage distribution of households by mode of refuse disposal, according to selected characteristics of the household, Botswana, 2007	28
Table 4. 1: Fertility Situation in Botswana 1984 to 2007	29

Table 4. 2: Percentage of Women aged 15-49 years who were pregnant during BFHS II, BFHS III and BHFS IV in 2007	30
Table 4. 3: Percentage distribution of all women and children ever born by some background characteristics, Botswana 2007	32
Table 4. 4: Percentage Distribution of teenagers aged 15-19 by number of children ever born and Background characteristics, Botswana 2007	33
Table 4. 5: Distribution of teenagers 15-19 ever attended school, experienced school drop-out due to pregnancy and those who were readmitted by age, Botswana 2007	34
Table 5. 1: Infant, neonatal, post-neonatal, child mortality rate (CMR) and under five mortality rate by place of residence, Botswana 2007	35
Table 6. 1: Percentage distribution of women aged 12-49 years by knowledge of contraceptive methods and type of method, Botswana, 2007	37
Table 6. 2 Percentage of men aged 12-49 years by knowledge of contraceptive methods by type of method, Botswana, 2007	38
Table 6. 3: Percentage distribution of females who have ever used contraception by the number of living children at the time of first use of contraception and current age group, Botswana 2007	39
Table 6. 4: Percentage distribution of women aged 12-49 years by current use of contraceptive methods by type of method, Botswana, 2007	40
Table 6. 5: Percentage distribution of men aged 12-49 years by current use of contraceptive methods by type of method, Botswana, 2007	41
Table 6. 6: Percentage distribution of females currently using pill by pill brand, source and residence, Botswana, 2007	42
Table 6.7: Percentage distribution of current users of contraceptives by source of method and specific method, Botswana, 2007	43
Table 6. 8: Percentage distribution of females not currently using contraceptive method with intentions of not using it in the future by main reason for not intending to use by marital status, Botswana, 2007	44
Table 6. 9: Percentage distribution of females not using contraceptive method but intend to use in future by preferred method and age, Botswana, 2007	45
Table 6. 10: Percentage Distribution of women aged 12-49 years by current use of specific contraception method for 1984, 1988, 1996 and 2007	46
Table 7. 1: Percentage distribution of women aged 12-49 who gave birth in the two years preceding the survey by type of personnel providing antenatal care, Botswana, 2007	47
Table 7. 2: Percentage of mothers with a birth in the last 24 months protected against neonatal tetanus, Botswana, 2007	48

Table 7. 3: Percentage distribution of women aged 15-49 with a birth in two years preceding the survey by type of delivery, personnel assisting at Botswana, 2007.....	49
Table 7. 4: Immunization Coverage (Card and History) among children 12-23 months	51
Table 7. 5: Percentage of children aged 0-59 months with diarrhoea in the last two weeks and treatment with oral rehydration solution (ORS) or other oral rehydration treatment (ORT), Botswana, 2007	53
Table 7. 6: Percentage distribution of children aged 0-2 years according to place of disposal of child's faeces, and the percentage of children aged 0-2 years whose stools are disposed of safely, Botswana, 2007	54
Table 7. 7: Percentage of children aged 0-59 months with suspected pneumonia who received antibiotic treatment, Botswana, 2007.....	55
Table 7. 8: Percentage Distribution of under 5 children with fever and taken for treatment by background characteristics, Botswana 2007	56
Table 7. 9: Percentage Distribution of under 5 children who had ear pain or discharge and were taken for treatment by background characteristics, Botswana 2007.....	57
Table 8. 1: Percentage of under-five children who are severely or moderately undernourished, Botswana, 2007	59
Table 8. 2: Percentage of live births in the 2 years preceding the survey that weighed below 2500 grams at birth, Botswana, 2007.....	61
Table 8. 3: Percentage of children under 5 years who were ever breastfed, Botswana 2007	62
Table 8. 4: Percentage of women aged 12-49 years with a birth in the 2 years preceding the survey who breastfed their baby within one hour of birth and within one day of birth, Botswana, 2007	63
Table 8. 5: Percentage of living children according to breastfeeding status at each age group, Botswana, 2007	64
Table 8. 6: Percentage distribution of children aged 6-59 months by whether they received a high dose Vitamin A supplement in the last 6 months, Botswana, 2007.....	66
Table 8. 7: Percentage of households consuming adequately iodized salt, Botswana, 2007	67
Table 8. 8: Percentage distribution of children aged 0-59 months by whether birth is registered, Botswana 2007	67
Table 8. 9: Percentage of children aged 36-59 months attending organized early childhood education, Botswana 2007	68
Table 8. 10: Percentage of children of primary school age attending primary school or secondary school (NAR), Botswana 2007	69
Table A. 1 Percentage distribution of household population according to type of toilet used by the household and the percentage of household members using sanitary means of excreta disposal, Botswana, 2007	76

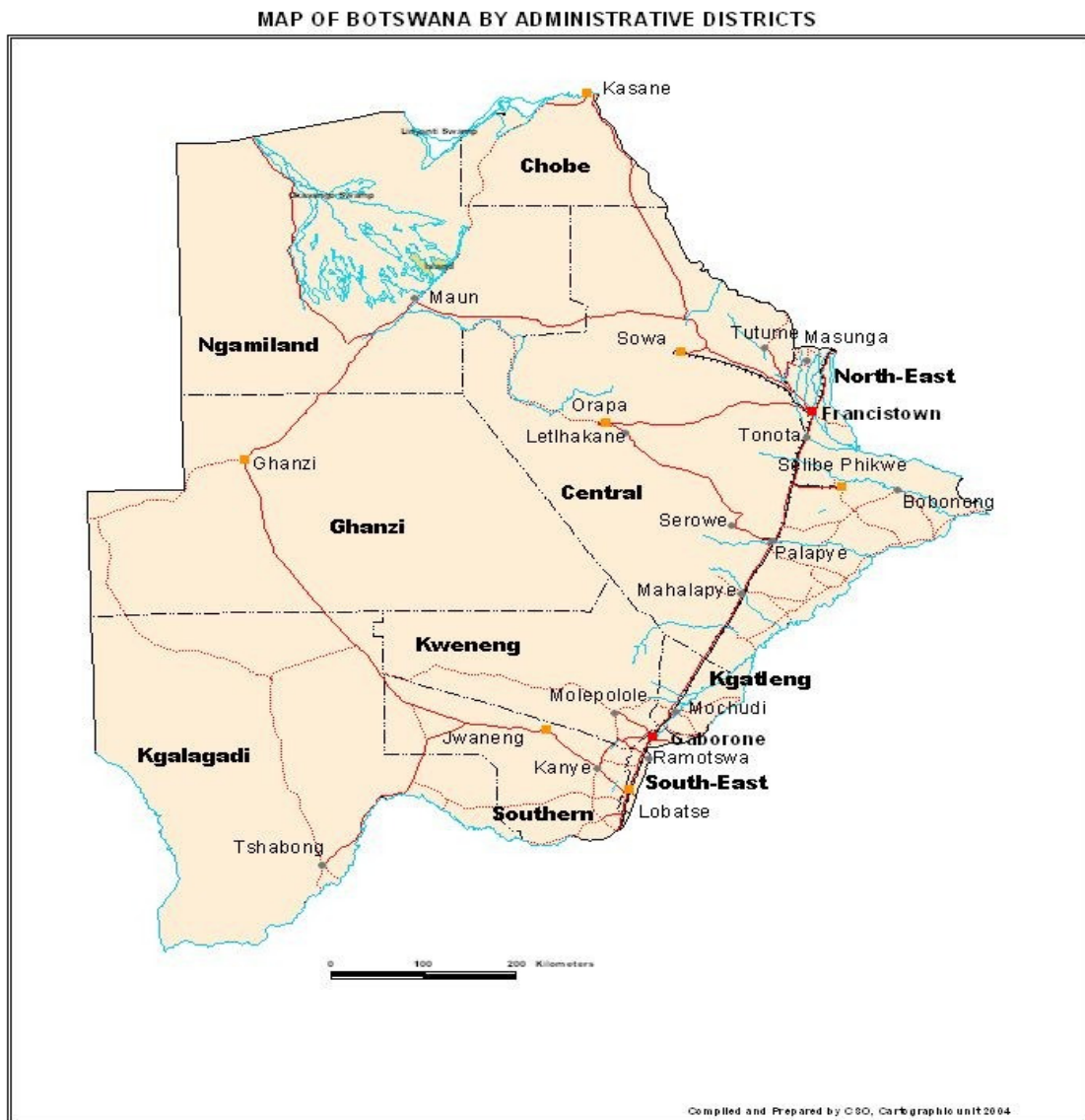
Table A. 2 Use of sanitary means of excreta disposal Percent distribution of household population according to type of toilet used by the household and the percentage of household members using sanitary means of excreta disposal, Botswana, 2007	77
Table A. 3 Percentage distribution of household population according to main source of drinking water and percentage of household members using improved drinking water sources, Botswana, 2007	78
Table A. 4: Percent distribution of household population according to main source of drinking water and percentage of household members using improved drinking water sources, Botswana, 2007	79
Table A. 5: Percentage of household population using both improved drinking water sources and sanitary means, Botswana 2007	80
Table A. 6: Percentage distribution of children aged 0-17 years according to living arrangements, Botswana 2007	81
Table A. 7: Age specific and total fertility rate for the 3 year period preceding the survey by place of residence, Botswana 2007	82
Table A. 8: Births, exposure, and age specific fertility rate (ASFR) for three year periods preceding the survey by mother's age at the time of birth and total fertility rate (TFR) in cities and towns, Botswana 2007	83
Table A. 9: Births, exposure, and age specific fertility rate (ASFR) for three year periods preceding the survey by mother's age at the time of birth and total fertility rate (TFR) in urban villages, Botswana 2007	84
Table A. 10: Births, exposure, and age specific fertility rate (ASFR) for three year periods preceding the survey by mother's age at the time of birth and total fertility rate (TFR) in rural, Botswana 2007	85
Table A. 11: Percentage of women aged 12-49 years by knowledge of contraceptive methods by district, Botswana, 2007	86
Table A. 12: Percentage of men aged 12-49 years by knowledge of contraceptive methods by district, Botswana, 2007	87
Table A. 13: Percentage of women aged 12-49 years by current use of contraceptive methods by district, Botswana, 2007	88
Table A. 14: Percentage of men aged 12-49 years by current use of contraceptive methods by district, Botswana, 2007	89
Table A. 15: Percentage of females currently using pill by pill brand, source and district, Botswana, 2007	90
Table A. 16: Percentage distribution of women aged 12-49 who gave birth in the two years preceding the survey by type of personnel providing antenatal care, Botswana, 2007	91
Table A. 17: Percentage distribution of women aged 12-49 who gave birth in the two years preceding the survey by type of personnel providing antenatal care, Botswana, 2007	92

Table A. 18: Percentage of mothers with a birth in the last 24 months protected against neonatal tetanus, Botswana, 2007	93
Table A. 19: Percentage distribution of women aged 15-49 with a birth in two years preceding the survey by type of personnel assisting at delivery Botswana, 2007.....	94
Table A. 20: Percentage distribution of children who have ever been breastfed by district, Botswana 2007	95
Table A. 21: Percentage of children aged 0-59 months in the last four weeks taken to a health provider, Botswana, 2007	96
Table A. 22: Percentage distribution of children aged 6-59 months by whether they received a high dose Vitamin A supplement in the last 6 months, Botswana, 2007.....	97
Table A. 23: Percentage of households consuming adequately iodized salt, Botswana, 2007.....	98
Table A. 24 : Percentage distribution of children aged 0-59 months by whether birth is registered, Botswana, 2007	99

List of Figures

Figure 1: Population Pyramid, Botswana 2007	16
Figure 2: Percentage household members using type of sanitary means of excreta disposal, Botswana, 2007	23
Figure 3: Age specific fertility rate for three years preceding the survey by residence, Botswana 2007.....	30
Figure 4: Percentage of children aged 0-59 months who are under nourished, Botswana 2007 ..	60
Figure 5: Percentage of living children according to breastfeeding status at each age group, Botswana, 2007	65
Figure 6: Percent of population according to their obesity status, Botswana 2007	71
Figure 7: Percent of female population according to their obesity status by place of residence, Botswana 2007	72
Figure 8: Percent of male population according to their obesity status by place of residence, Botswana 2007	73
Figure 9: Percent of female population according to their obesity status by age-group, Botswana 2007.....	74
Figure 10: Percent of male population according to their obesity status by age-group, Botswana 2007.....	75

Botswana Map



EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The Botswana Family Health Survey IV (BFHS IV) is the fourth in series of the surveys of this nature. The first was conducted in 1984, the second in 1988, the third in 1996 and the current in 2007.

The BFHS is conducted to provide information on family planning awareness, approval and use, basic indicators of maternal and child health, and other topics related to family health. In addition, the BFHS IV complements the data collected in the 2006 Botswana Demographic Survey, by obtaining information needed to explore trends in fertility and mortality, and to examine the factors that influence these basic demographic indicators.

1. Education

About 86 percent of children of primary school age (6-12 years) in Botswana are attending school, primary or secondary school. School attendance in rural areas is lower than in the cities/towns and urban villages at 83.8 percent.

2. Salt Iodization

Sixty five (65) percent of households have adequately (15+ PPM) iodized salt. The percentage of households with adequately iodized salt ranges from 68.7 percent in rural areas to 88.5 percent in cities/towns.

3. Water and Sanitation

Ninety seven (97) percent of the population has access to safe drinking water – almost 100 percent in cities/towns and urban villages and 91 percent in rural areas. About 80 percent of the population is using sanitary means of excreta disposal.

4. Fertility

The fertility estimates from the surveys show a decline from 6.5 children per woman in 1984 to 5.0 children in 1988 to 4.3 children in 1996 and finally 2.9 children in 2007, close to a 4 child drop in about two decades. The results further indicate that median age at first sexual intercourse among women aged 15 – 49 (child bearing ages) is 17 years while age at first pregnancy is 18 years.

5. Family Planning

Knowledge of family planning is nearly universal with 98.3 percent of all women aged 15-49 and 96.8 percent of all men aged 15-49 knowing at least one method of family planning. Among all women, the most widely known method of family planning is the male condom at 96.6 percent followed by a pill at 87.8 percent. Similarly the widely known among men is the male condom at 95.4 percent, followed by injection at 73.3 percent. Modern contraceptive use stands at 52.8 percent for females and 47 percent for men.

6. Contraception

Current use of contraception was reported by 51.2 percent of all women aged 15-49. The most popular method is the condom which is used by 41.7 percent of women followed by the pill, which accounted for 6.1 percent of women aged 15-49.

7. Orphanhood and Living Arrangements of Children

Overall, 28 percent of children aged 0-17 were living with both parents. Children who were not living with a biological parent comprise 25.8 percent while children who had one or both parents dead amount to 21.7 percent of all children aged 0-17. About 3 percent of children aged 0-17 were orphaned with both parents dead.

8. Acute Respiratory Infections

Eleven (11) percent of the under five children had an acute respiratory infection in the two weeks prior to the survey. Approximately 37 percent of these children received an antibiotic.

9. Antenatal Care

About 95 percent of women in Botswana received some type of antenatal care from skilled personnel (doctor, nurse, and midwife).

10. Assistance at Delivery

About 94.6 percent of births occurring in the year prior to the survey were attended by a doctor, nurse, or midwife. This percentage is highest in cities/towns at 99.3 percent and lowest in rural areas at 90.2 percent.

11. Child Malnutrition

About 13 percent of children under age five in Botswana are underweight or too thin for their age. Twenty six percent of children are stunted or too short for their age and 7.2 percent are wasted or thin for their height. A lower proportion of children who are aged under 12 months are underweight compared to children who are aged 12 months and above.

12. Breastfeeding

Approximately 23 percent of children aged under four months are exclusively breastfed, a level considerably lower than recommended. At age 6-9 months, 45.5 percent of children were breastfed and given solid or semi-solid foods. By age 20-23 months, only 5.9 percent are continued to be breastfed. Forty percent of infants were put to the breast within one hour of birth and 65.6 percent started breastfeeding within one day of birth.

13. Birth Registration

The births of 72.2 percent of children under five years old in Botswana have been registered. Registration is highest in cities/towns at 85.2 and lowest in rural areas at 66.9 percent.

14. Diarrhea

Approximately 83 percent of children with diarrhea received one or more of the recommended home treatments (i.e., were treated with ORS or RHF). Thirty two (32) percent of children with illness did not receive the recommended treatment.

15. Low Birth Weight

Approximately 13 percent of infants are estimated to weigh less than 2500 grams at birth.

16. Immunization Coverage

Ninety nine (99) percent of children aged 12-23 months received a BCG vaccination by the age of 12 months and the first dose of DPT was given to 98 percent. The percentage dropped to 97.2 percent for second dose of DPT and declined to 95.9 percent for the third dose. Similarly, 97.4 percent of children received Polio 1 by age 12 months and declines to 96.3 percent by the third dose. The coverage for measles and Hepatitis B vaccine was lower than for the other vaccines at 93.7 and 93.1 percent respectively. Ninety (90) percent of children had all the vaccinations in the first 12 months of life.

17. Infant and Under Five Mortality

The data indicates that the infant mortality rate was about 57 per 1000 births, child hood mortality rate was 20 and the under five mortality rate was 76 per 1000.

18. Obesity: Body Mass Index (BMI)

About 36 percent of the population aged 18 and over were considered to be of normal weight. Approximately 35 percent were reported to be underweight while 29 percent were overweight.

SUMMARY INDICATORS: BFHS I to IV

Indicator	Description	1984 BFHS I	1988 BFHS II	1996 BFHS III	MICS 2000	2007 BFHS IV
Fertility						
Total fertility rate	Total number of children born to women aged 15-49 years	6.5	5	4.3		2.9
Average CEB to women aged 15-49	Average Children Ever Born (CEB) to women aged 15-49 years		5.8	5.5	-	4.5
Percentage women who are pregnant	Percentage of women aged 15-49 years who are pregnant	-	7.1	4.6	-	3.7
Median age at first sexual intercourse			17.3	-	-	17.0
Median age at first birth			19.6	-	-	19.0
Median age at first marriage			-	-	-	24.0
Median age at first pregnancy			-	-	-	18.0
Mortality		-				
Infant mortality rate (Per 1000 births)	Probability of dying before reaching age 1	70	37.4	37.0	57	57.0
Under five Mortality (Per 1000)	Probability of dying before reaching age 5		53.4	45	75	76.0
Childhood mortality rate (Per 1000)	Probability of dying between one and five		-	16 ¹	20	20.0
Nutritional Status of under-fives						
Underweight prevalence	Proportion of under-fives who are too thin for their age		-	17	13	13.5
Stunting prevalence	Proportion of under-fives who are too short for their age		-	29	23	25.9
Wasting prevalence	Proportion of under-fives who are too thin for their height		-	11	5	7.2
Households with:						
Safe drinking water	Proportion of population who use a safe drinking water source		-	77	97	95.8
Sanitary means of excreta disposal	Proportion of population who use a sanitary means of excreta disposal		-	55	84	79.8
Iodised salt	Proportion of households consuming adequately iodized salt		-	-	66	65.2

Indicator	Description	1984 BFHS I	1988 BFHS II	1996 BFHS III	MICS 2000	2007 BFHS IV
Maternal and Child care						
Antenatal care	Proportion of women aged 15-49 attended at least once during pregnancy by skilled person		92	94	97	94.1
Contraceptive prevalence	Proportion of women Aged 15-49 who are using a method	27.8	30	42	44	52.8
Childbirth care	Proportion of births attended by skilled health personnel	66	78.0	87.0	95	94.6
Birth weight below 2.5kg	Proportion of live births that weigh below 2500 grams		-	-	8.0	13.1
Ever breastfed	Percent of under 5 children who were ever breastfed		-	-	64	76.3
Exclusive breastfeeding	Proportion of infants aged less than 4 months who are exclusively breastfed		-	-	29	23.3
Continued breastfeeding rate	Proportion of children age 12-15 months		-	-	53	36.5
	Proportion of children age 20-23 months		-	-	11	5.9
Diarrhea	Proportion of under five children who had diarrhea during the two weeks prior to the interview.		9.9	9.8	-	17.9
Severe cough	Proportion of under five children with suspected pneumonia i.e who had illness with a cough accompanied by rapid or difficult breathing and whose symptoms were due to problem in the chest and a blocked nose in the last four weeks.		28.7	17.1	-	23.7
Fever	Proportion of under five children who had fever during the two weeks prior to the interview		3.9	9.2	-	19.0
Ear pain	Proportion of under five children who had ear pain during the two weeks prior to the interview		-	5.9	-	5.1
Children protected against neonatal tetanus	Proportion of one year old children protected against neonatal tetanus through immunization of their mother		84.5	88.8	72	69.9
ORT use	Proportion of under-fives who had diarrhea in the last 2 weeks who were treated with oral rehydration salts or appropriate household solution		72	-	96	82.9
Care seeking for acute respiratory infections	Proportion of under-fives who had ARI in the last 2 weeks and were taken to an appropriate health provider		29	-	14	37.2
Vitamin A	Percentage of under 5 children who received Vitamin A		-	-	-	66.6

Indicator	Description	1984 BFHS I	1988 BFHS II	1996 BFHS III	MICS 2000	2007 BFHS IV
Immunisation Coverage: Source : EPI Coverage Survey 2007 (MOH)						
BCG	Proportion of children immunized against tuberculosis by age one		98.6	98.7	98.8	98.9
DPT three doses	Proportion of children immunized against diphtheria, pertussis and tetanus by age one		94	95.3	98	95.9
Polio three doses	Proportion of children immunized against polio by age one		97.7	93.8	98	96.3
Measles	Proportion of children immunized against measles by age one		92.6	74.2	83	93.7
Hepatitis B			-	-	-	93.1
Indicator for monitoring Children's Rights						
Preschool development	Proportion of children aged 36-59 months who are attending some form of organized early childhood education program		-	-	17	17.8
Birth registration	Proportion of under-fives children whose births are reported registered		-	-	59	72.2
Children's living arrangements	Proportion of children aged 0-14 years in household not living with a biological parent		-	-	24	
	Proportion of children aged 0-17 years in household not living with biological parent				-	25.0
Orphans in Household						
	Proportion of children aged 0-17 years who are orphaned living in households; <i>Both Parents</i>				1.4	3.4
	Proportion of children aged 0-17 years who are orphaned living in households <i>One parent</i>				10.8	11.1
	Proportion of children aged 0-17 years who are orphaned living in household <i>one or both</i>				12.2	21.7

CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION, SURVEY BACKGROUND

1.1 Geography, Climate and Economy

The Republic of Botswana, formerly Bechuanaland Protectorate, is a country of about 582,000 square kilometers in size, situated at the centre of the Southern African Plateau at a mean altitude of 1,000 meters above sea level. It borders on the republic of South Africa, Namibia, Zambia, and Zimbabwe. Gazetted forest reserves cover 4,555 square kilometers which is only 0.8 percent of the total land area. Botswana is relatively flat, with gentle undulations and occasional rocky outcrops.

The climate of Botswana is semi-arid. Temperatures are very high in summer and low during winter nights, often reaching below zero levels. Winter days are mild. The mean monthly maximum temperatures range between 23⁰C to 25⁰C in the Northern parts of the country and 21⁰C to 23⁰C in the Southern parts. The lowest mean monthly temperatures vary between 1⁰C to 5⁰C over the Eastern areas and 5⁰C to 7⁰C in the Northern parts of the country.

Rainfall is seasonal with uneven distribution. Most rivers flow seasonally, except in the Northwest District where the major rivers are perennial. Ground water exists at varying depths in most parts of Botswana. A sand-covered thirst-land, named the Kgalagadi (Kalahari) Desert, comprises 84 percent of the land area of Botswana. The soil of the Kgalagadi is sandy and of poor quality, yet this thirst-land frequently sustains abundant vegetation which contrasts with the general absence of surface water.

The availability of water is dominant factor influencing the pattern of settlement. Water is needed to support and sustain the growth of crops and grass and to supply mining and other industrial needs, and to meet the demands of human settlements. About 87 percent of the population lives in the eastern part of Botswana where rainfall is more regular, ground water is available, and the soil is relatively fertile. Drought adversely affects the already fragile food and agriculture situation in the country and seriously impairs the rural economy and socio-cultures.

Botswana gained its independence in 1966. At the time, Botswana was one of the poorest countries in the world with a per capita income estimated at less than USD100 per annum. It was largely rural and dependent on agriculture for livelihood. The country's real GDP, valued at 1993/94 prices amounted to P908.6 million. Of this total, agriculture accounted for P387.6 million or about 43 percent, while Bank, Insurance and other business services, the second largest sector contributed P183 million or about 20 percent. None of the other major sectors of the economy accounted for as much as 10 percent of real GDP in 1966. In terms of employment most people were engaged in subsistence agricultural farming and a significant part of the labour force was working as migrant laborers in the South Africa mines. There was therefore very little in terms of industry except the abattoir in Lobatse and a few economic activities that had emerged in Francistown.

With the discovery of minerals, especially diamonds, soon after independence, Botswana quickly became the fastest growing economy in the world. Its growth rate averaged 13 percent through

the 1970s and 1980s. Within a short period of time diamond began to dominate in terms of contribution to GDP, government revenue and to export revenue. From being almost non-existent in 1966, mining contributed as much as 47 percent to GDP in 1986 before declining slightly to 35 percent share in 2003. Agriculture on the other hand declined to less than 5 percent by 1986 from more than 40 percent in 1966. After 10 years of successful diamond mining, the economy began to face a different challenge, that of trying to diversify the economy away from dominance by the diamond sector. This has been the focus of government policy in the last 20 years or more as is reflected in both the National Development Plan and the various budget speeches. That is important because diamond are an exhaustible resource and secondly their performance depends on demand from outside the country, which may put the country into an uncertain path of development. Another important issue is that, while diamond mining contributes a relatively large proportion to growth, GDP, export shares, and government revenues, its direct impact in terms of employment is quite small because it is capital intensive by nature. For most of the years its contribution to employment has been between 3 and 4 percent.

The good performance in terms of growth driven by diamond mining has enabled the country to make significant human and infrastructural investments. As a result, most communities now have access to schools, health and water within reasonable distance. The investment infrastructure in health and education has seen some major results in terms of human development. Social indicators show that life expectancy had gone up before a big reversal from HIV/AIDS, literacy rates are quite high, and more schools, roads and hospitals have been provided.

While economic growth has been impressive, income inequality remains high. Between 1985/86 and 1993/94 disposable income inequality declined marginally from a gini-coefficient of 0.556 to 0.537. For the urban areas disposable income inequality was however increasing between the two periods. Between 1993/94 and 2002/03 disposable income inequality actually increased marginally as the gini-coefficient rose from 0.537 to 0.573. Poverty has also remained high over time even though it was declining. It declined from about 59 percent in 1985/86 to about 47 percent in 1993/94. The worst forms of poverty are concentrated in the country's most remote arrears, where a high degree of dependence on government welfare exists. Result released from the 2002/2003 HIES indicates poverty to have declined further to about 30 percent of the individuals living below the poverty datum line. Using the one US Dollar per day however shows poverty to have increased from 19.9 percent people living below the one US Dollar per day in 1993/94 to 23.4 percent in 2002/03. The results also show that more people lived below the one US Dollar per day in the rural areas for both periods. In terms of region, poverty declined for the cities/towns between the periods, while it rose for urban villages and rural areas with the biggest increase being for rural areas. Poverty is therefore still a more serious issue in the rural areas even though it is prevalent in the urban areas. Unemployment has also been high, even though declining. It declined from an estimate of about 24 percent to about 17.5 percent between 2002/03 and 1995/96.

The current challenges facing Botswana's economy are; diversifying the economy from the dominance of the mining sector especially diamonds, dealing with the HIV/AIDS pandemic, which is taking a greater proportion of government budget. HIV/AIDS also affects growth negatively through its effect on labour productivity through loss of efficiency units and skilled

manpower. Gains in both mortality and life expectancy from the past investment in health are being eroded by the disease. The second challenge is that of dealing with significantly high unemployment rates that also contribute to slow progress in poverty reduction in the country. Unemployment is due to both fewer job opportunities and increasing labour force especially the youth with less skills and experience required by the labour market. Lastly, the economy's greatest problem especially as it moves to National Development Plan 10 (NDP 10) is generally how to sustain the past growth performance from other sectors of the economy in order to achieve both the Vision 2016 Goals and the Millennium Development Goals (MGDs). Given that diamonds have reached their peak, it will be difficult to achieve the growth rates required to reach these goals unless other sectors effectively take over from diamond in terms of growth momentum.

1.2 Population

Botswana's population is generally homogeneous compared to countries in East and West Africa. However, when compared to countries such as Lesotho and Swaziland, the population is more heterogeneous.

The people of Botswana are known as "Batswana". They are made up of various ethnic groups including the Bakgatla, Bakwena, Balete, Bangwato, Barolong, Batawana, Batlokwa, Bangwaketse, Basarwa, Baherero, Babirwa, Bakalanga, Bakgalagadi, Basubiya, Batswapong, Bayeyi, Bambukushu, and Babenderu in addition to a small number of people of Asian and European descent and people of mixed ancestry. While Setswana is the national language, English is the official business language. Over seventy percent of the population speaks Setswana.

At independence the population was largely rural and the majority of the people resided on the Eastern part of the country. Most of the people were mobile commuting between villages, cattle posts and the lands. With the rapid expansion of economic activities in the mid 1970's and 1980's, the pattern of settlements has changed rapidly. There is a growing concentration of the population around major towns such as Gaborone, Francistown, Lobatse, Molepolole, Serowe, Palapye, Selibe-Phikwe and Maun

1.3 Population Policies and Programmes

It is generally recognized that the adoption and promotion of positive population's policies by the country can have a significant social and economic impact on its people and can improve their quality of life. The government of Botswana has aimed at raising the standard of living of the people of Botswana since its first National Development Plan (1968-1973). The government of Botswana's commitment in addressing population issues together with their social and economic implications are reflected in the National Population Policy developed and adopted in 1997. Currently, this population policy is under review.

The main goal of the population policy is to improve the quality of life and standard of living of all people in Botswana. The government has decided to take account of and influence population growth trends in the desired direction. In order to do so, the government has tried to explicitly consider and integrate into national development planning framework issues such as health,

education, employment, water, housing ,food, energy, environment, women’s status and poverty alleviation.

1.4 Objectives of BFHS IV

The first Botswana Family Health Survey (BFHS) was conducted in 1984, the second in 1988 and the third in 1996. The forth and current was carried out in 2007.

The BFHS is conducted to provide information on family planning awareness, approval and use, basic indicators of maternal and child health, and other topics related to family health. In addition, the BFHS IV complements the data collected in the Botswana Demographic Survey, by obtaining information needed to explore trends in fertility and mortality, and to examine the factors that influence these basic demographic indicators, particularly the proximate determinants of fertility.

Specific Objectives:

- i. To provide up to date information for assessing the situation of children and women in the country;
- ii. To collect information on health related matters such as antenatal checkups, supervised deliveries, health status and use of family planning;
- iii. To develop skills in conducting periodic surveys designed to monitor changes in demographic topics related to fertility, mortality and maternal-child health;
- iv. To provide internationally comparable data that can be used by researchers investigating topics related to fertility, mortality and maternal- child health;
- v. To furnish data needed for monitoring progress towards goals established by Millenium Development Goals and the goals of A WORLD FIT FOR CHILDREN (WFFC) as a basis for future action; and
- vi. To contribute to the improvement of data and monitoring system in the country and to strengthen technical expertise in the design, implementation, and analysis of such systems.

CHAPTER 2: SURVEY METHODOLOGY

The survey methodology in brief is given below. However the details about the survey methodology are given in **Appendix-B**.

2.1 Sampling Frame

A two stage sample design was adopted for BFHS hence two frames were used. The sampling frame for the first stage was based on the 2001 Population and Housing Census. This comprised a list of all *Enumeration Areas*¹ (EAs). During the 2001 Census, EAs were formed of manageable size (in terms of dwellings/households), so the primary sampling units (PSUs) were EAs. A list of occupied households in the selected EA served as a sampling frame for the second stage and so the secondary sampling units (SSUs) were occupied households.

2.2 Stratification

Stratification was undertaken such that all districts and major urban centers become their own strata. With regard to increase precision consideration was also given to group EAs according to ecological zones in rural districts and according to income in cities/towns. Geographical stratification along ecological zones and income categories was expected to improve the accuracy of survey data in view that homogeneity of the variables is relatively high. Strata 1-7 comprised of cities and towns; stratum 8 was a derived stratum of EAs of Urban Villages of rural districts (strata 9-27).

2.3 Sample Design

A stratified two-stage probability sample design was used for the selection of the sample (households). The first stage was the selection of EAs as Primary Sampling Units (PSUs) selected with probability proportional to measures of size (PPS), where measures of size (MOS) were the number of households in the EA as defined by the 2001 Population and Housing Census. In all 393 EAs were selected with probability proportional to size. At the second stage of sampling, the households were systematically selected from fresh list of occupied households prepared at the beginning of the survey's fieldwork (i.e. listing of households for the selected EAs). Overall 7,860 households were drawn systematically.

¹ *Enumeration Area (EA): the smallest geographic unit, which represented an average work-load for an enumerator over a specified period (census period).*

2.4 Questionnaires

During the development of the questionnaires, CSO together with stakeholders revised the BFHS & MICS questionnaires. The final version of the questionnaires was finalized on the basis of the experience gained from the pretest conducted using the drafted questionnaires for the survey.

The 2007 BFHS consisted of four questionnaires, namely;

1. The Household Questionnaire
2. Individual Under- five(0-4 years) Questionnaire
3. Individual female (12-49 years) Questionnaire
4. Individual male (12-49 years) Questionnaire

The household questionnaire was administered for each household selected. Women and men aged 12-49 were identified in the household and interviewed separately. For children aged under five years the questionnaire was administered by a mother or caretaker of the child.

2.5 Field work and Data processing

The field staff comprised supervisors, enumerators and drivers. Supervisors were trained from the 3rd - 8th August 2007 and enumerators from the 13th - 30th August 2007. The data was collected by 34 teams each comprising one supervisor, five enumerators and two drivers with vehicles. There were a total of 393 enumeration areas (EAs) and each team was assigned to cover at least 10 EAs. Data was collected from the 1st September 2007 -31st January 2008.

Before data entry was carried out, the questionnaires were edited to check if all the relevant questions have been responded to and coded according to the codes designed for the study. Editing and coding started in September 2007 by 23 Coders and finished in February 2008. Data entry was carried out under the supervision of one programmer/supervisor. Consistency checks on the data set as per the Computer edit Specifications designed by the subject matter specialists were performed.

2.6 Response Rates

Of the 7,860 households selected for the 2007 BFHS, 7,031 were successfully interviewed with a response rate of 90 percent. The cities/towns and urban villages had almost the same response rate of 90.5 percent and 90.4 percent respectively. In rural areas the response rate was lower at 88.0 percent. In the households interviewed 7,319 women aged 12 -49 years were identified as eligible for the individual questionnaire of which 6,916 were successfully interviewed, giving a response rate of 94.5 percent. A total of 6,712 eligible men (aged 12-49 years) were identified in the households, out of these, 6,101 were successfully interviewed giving a response rate of 90.9 percent slightly lower than the female response rate. Finally 2,837 children aged 0-4 years were listed in the household questionnaire and only 2,726 questionnaires were completed for the children yielding a response rate of 96.1 percent.

Table 2. 1: Number of households by result of household interviews and response rates, Botswana, 2007

	Place of Residence			Total
	City/Town	Urban Village	Rural	
Sampled households	2,240	2,400	3,220	7,860
Interviewed households	2,027	2,170	2,834	7,031
Household response rate (%)	90.5	90.4	88.0	89.5
Eligible women	2,131	2,600	2,588	7,319
Interviewed women	2,021	2,437	2,458	6,916
Women response rate (%)	94.8	93.7	95.0	94.5
Eligible children under 5	505	925	1,397	2,837
Mother/Caretaker Interviewed	482	874	1,346	2,726
Child response rate (%)	95.4	94.5	96.3	96.1
Eligible male 12-49 years	1,918	2,202	2,592	6,712
Male Interviewed	1,719	1,980	2,402	6,101
Male response rate (%)	89.6	89.9	92.7	90.9

CHAPTER 3: CHARACTERISTICS OF THE HOUSEHOLD POPULATION

The Household questionnaire of the BFHS IV included two questions distinguishing between the de jure (Persons who usually live in selected household) and the de facto population (persons who spent the night before the interview in the household). However tabulations for the household data presented in this chapter are based on the de facto definition just like the previous surveys

3.1 Age and Sex Composition

Table 3.1 presents the percent distribution of the de facto population by age and sex. The sample population included 24,884 individuals of whom 11,878 (47.7 percent) were males and 13,006 (52.3 percent) were females. The under five population constituted 11.5 percent of the total sample population (not in Table 3.1).

Table 3. 1: Percentage distribution of the sample population age groups, residence and sex, Botswana, 2007

	Sex				Total Number	Percent
	Male		Female			
	Number	Percent	Number	Percent		
Age						
0-14	4,274	36	4,257	33	8,504	34.0
15-64	7,055	59.2	7,932	61.0	14,986	60.3
65+	560	4.8	791	6.1	1,351	5.5
Missing/DK	15	0.1	25	0.2	40	0.2
Place of residence						
City/Town	2,641	22.2	2,841	21.8	5,482	22.0
Urban Village	3,772	31.8	4,478	34.4	8,250	33.2
Rural	5,465	46.0	5,687	43.7	11,151	44.8
Total	11,878	100.0	13,006	100.0	24,884	100.0

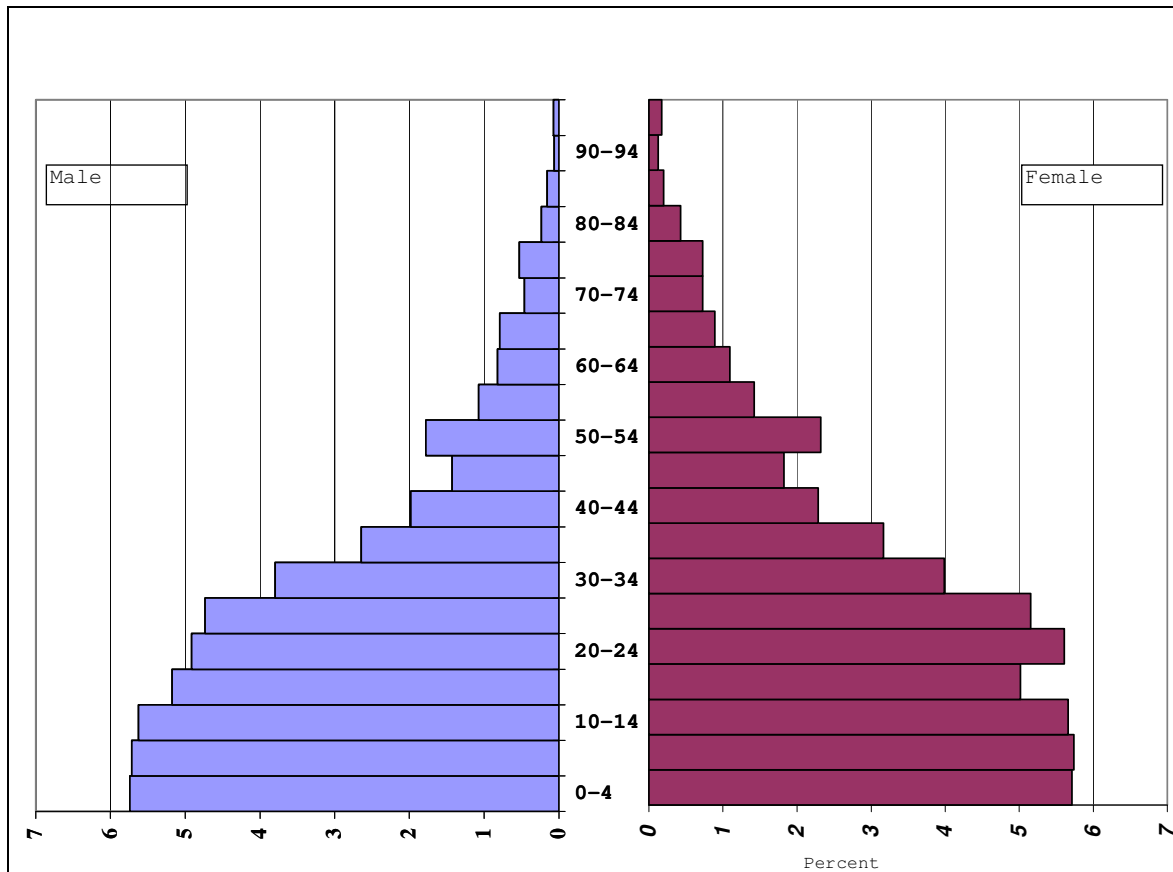
Age and sex are important variables in analyzing demographic trends. The data shows that there are slightly more women (52.3 percent) than men (47.7 percent) in the overall population. Women are concentrated in the rural areas (43.7 percent) than in urban villages (34.4 percent). About 55 percent of the population reside in urban areas (cities/towns and urban villages) while 45 percent are in rural areas.

Table 3.2 presents the distribution of the de facto household population in the 2007 BFHS survey by district, sex and household size. The average household size was 3.5 persons per household. Central Bobonong had the highest average household size (4.6) followed by, Kweneng east and Kgatleng with 4.5 persons per a household each. The lowest average household size was in Sowa with 0.7 persons per household..

Table 3. 2: Percentage distribution of the sample population by district and sex, Botswana, 2007

District	Male		Female		Total		Av. HH Size
	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	
Gaborone	1,244	10.5	1,318	10.1	2,561	10.29	2.6
Francistown	666	5.6	709	5.4	1,375	5.53	3.1
Lobatse	239	2.0	243	1.9	482	1.94	3.2
Selibe Phikwe	328	2.8	377	2.9	705	2.83	2.7
Orapa	46	0.4	39	0.3	85	0.34	1.2
Jwaneng	91	0.8	130	1.0	221	0.89	2.9
Sowa	27	0.2	26	0.2	53	0.21	1.0
Southern- Ngwaketse	822	6.9	933	7.2	1,755	7.05	3.9
Borolong	338	2.8	350	2.7	689	2.77	3.6
Southern	73	0.6	73	0.6	146	0.59	1.8
South East	425	3.6	534	4.1	959	3.85	4.0
Kweneng East	1,538	12.9	1,616	12.4	3,154	12.68	4.5
Kweneng west	273	2.3	300	2.3	573	2.30	3.4
Kgatleng	544	4.6	643	4.9	1,187	4.77	4.5
Serowe/Palapye	1,045	8.8	1,105	8.5	2,151	8.64	3.3
Central -Mahalapye	708	6.0	702	5.4	1,410	5.67	3.8
Central -Bobonong	483	4.1	543	4.2	1,026	4.12	4.6
Central-Boteti	249	2.1	301	2.3	550	2.21	3.0
Central -Tutume	889	7.5	1,039	8.0	1,928	7.75	4.4
North East	275	2.3	366	2.8	640	2.57	3.2
Ngamiland East	543	4.6	555	4.3	1,098	4.41	4.2
Ngamiland West	321	2.7	387	3.0	708	2.85	4.4
Chobe	103	0.9	112	0.9	215	0.86	1.9
Gantsi	268	2.3	275	2.1	543	2.18	3.4
Kgalagadi- South	193	1.6	180	1.4	373	1.50	3.1
Kgalagadi North	147	1.2	150	1.2	297	1.19	4.1
Total	11,878	100.0	13,006	100.0	24,884	100.0	3.5

Figure 1: Population Pyramid, Botswana 2007



The age structure is typical of a young population characterized by high fertility. This type of population structure imposes a heavy burden on the social and economic assets of the country. Botswana's population is still young, with 34 percent of the population under 15 years, with percentage in the older age groups (65 years and above) constituting just 5.5 percent of the population.

Table 3.3: Percentage distribution of households by selected characteristics, Botswana, 2007

Selected characteristics	Percent	Number of households
Sex of household head		
Male	52.9	3,721
Female	47.1	3,310
No. of household members		
1	29.6	2,083
2-3	30.3	2,128
4-5	20.2	1,421
6-7	10.3	727
8-9	5.7	401
10+	3.9	271
Total	100.0	7,031

The size and composition of households and sex of the household are important aspects that impact on household welfare. Table 3.3 shows information collected in the 2007 BFHS survey on sex composition and household size. It is evident from the table that 52.9 percent of households are headed by males, while 47.1 percent are headed by females. About 30 percent of the households are one member households.

3.2 Eligible Respondents Characteristics

The purpose of this section is to provide descriptive summary of the demographic and socio-economic profile of eligible respondents in the BFHS 2007 survey. These are women and men aged 12-49 years. This basic information on women and men in the reproductive age group is crucial for the interpretation of the survey findings within the context of reproduction, health and women's status. The percentage distribution of respondents by various demographic and socio-economic characteristics can also be used as an approximate indicator of the representativeness of the survey sample to the general population. The main background characteristics that will be used in subsequent chapters on reproduction and health are: age at the time of the survey, marital status, residence and education

Table 3.4 shows data on the background characteristics of the male and female respondents aged 12-49, eligible for individual interview in the BFHS 2007 survey, by background characteristics, including age, marital status, education and place of residence.

The age distribution shows that among the target group respondents, 48.9 percent of females and 48.3 percent of males are under age 30. The data show that most of the respondents are never married females (47.7 percent) and males (53.1 percent). The living together males are (28.7 percent), compared with (30.1 percent) of females. About 2 percent of males and 5.2 percent females are divorced, separated or widowed.

The distribution of respondents by place of residence shows that 38.7 percent of men and 35.3 percent women live in rural areas. In cities/towns live 33.3 percent men and 30.3 percent women. More females (34.4 percent) than males (28.0 percent) reside in urban villages.

About 8 percent of the sample population never attended school while 70.4 percent have secondary education.

Table 3. 4: Percentage distribution of eligible respondents by age-groups, place of residence, educational level and marital status; Botswana, 2007

Background Characteristics	Sex				Total	
	Male		Female			
	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent
Age						
12-14	25	1.1	30	1.0	55	1.0
15-19	173	7.6	181	6.2	354	6.8
20-24	375	16.6	496	16.9	871	16.7
25-29	522	23.0	612	20.8	1,134	21.8
30-34	433	19.1	520	17.7	952	18.3
35-39	327	14.4	482	16.4	808	15.5
40-44	230	10.1	330	11.2	560	10.8
45-49	183	8.1	288	9.8	471	9.0
Place of residence						
City/Town	754	33.3	891	30.3	1,645	31.6
Urban Village	636	28.0	1,011	34.4	1,647	31.6
Rural	877	38.7	1,036	35.3	1,913	36.8
Educational level of members						
No education	220	9.7	198	6.7	418	8.0
Pre-school	1	.0	6	.2	7	.1
Primary	416	18.3	658	22.4	1,073	20.6
Secondary	1,610	71.0	2,054	69.9	3,664	70.4
Non-formal/Non-standard	20	.9	23	.8	43	.8
Current marital status						
Never married	1,204	53.1	1,383	47.1	2,587	49.7
Married	374	16.5	519	17.7	893	17.2
Living together	650	28.7	885	30.1	1,535	29.5
Separated	6	.2	21	.7	26	.5
Divorced	14	.6	35	1.2	48	.9
Widowed	19	.9	96	3.3	115	2.2
Total	2,267	100.0	2,938	100.0	5,205	100.0

Table 3.5 shows that a sample of 2,706 under five children was selected and out of these children, (50.3 percent) were males while (49.7 percent) were females. The results further shows that about 50.6 percent of under five children were residing in rural areas while 32.8 percent were residing in urban villages and 16.7 percent in cities/towns. A greater percentage of caretaker/mothers have attained secondary education (59.9 percent) and 26.1 percent attained

primary education, followed by 12.5 percent with no education and non-formal/non-standard (1.3 percent).

Table 3. 5: Percentage distribution of children under five years of age by sex, place of residence, age-group and educational level of caretaker/mother, Botswana, 2007

Background Characteristics	Percent	Number of under-5 children
Sex		
Male	50.3	1,360
Female	49.7	1,342
Place of residence		
City/Town	16.7	450
Urban Village	32.8	885
Rural	50.6	1,367
Age		
< 6 months	9.0	243
6-11 months	11.4	307
12-23 months	21.7	586
24-35 months	21.5	582
36-47 months	19.7	531
48-59 months	16.8	454
Educational Level of Caretaker/Mother		
No education/Pre-school	12.5	339
Primary	26.1	705
Secondary	59.9	1,622
Non-formal/Non-standard	1.3	35
DK/missing	0.2	5
Total	100.0	2,706

3.3 Orphanhood and Living Arrangement of Children Aged 0 – 17

Children who are orphaned or living away from their parents may be at increased risk of impoverishment, discrimination, denial of property rights to inheritance, various forms of abuse, neglect and exploitation of their labour and sexuality. Monitoring the level of orphan-hood and the living arrangements of children assists in identifying those who may be at risk and in tracking changes overtime.

Table 3. 6: Percentage children's living arrangements and orphanhood, Botswana 2007

	Age				Total
	0-4 years	5-9 years	10-14 years	15-17 years	
Living with both parents	29.2	28.1	25.5	23.1	26.9
Living with neither parent					
Only father alive	.6	2.3	3.9	5.3	2.7
Only mother alive	1.6	3.7	5.8	6.0	4.1
Both are alive	16.2	19.3	17.8	17.5	17.7
Both are dead	.4	2.8	4.7	6.9	3.3
Total	18.2	25.8	28.3	30.4	25.1
Living with mother only					
Father alive	38.8	24.6	21.0	17.8	26.6
Father dead	6.9	9.3	12.5	13.6	10.2
Total	45.7	33.9	33.5	31.4	36.7
Living with father only					
Mother alive	2.0	3.0	2.5	2.4	2.5
Mother dead	.2	.4	.9	.9	.6
Total	2.2	3.4	3.4	3.3	3.1
Not Stated	4.0	6.5	5.4	6.5	5.5
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
One or both parents dead	9.8	19.3	29.1	34.7	21.7
Number of children	2,849	2,848	2,807	1,556	10,060

During BFHS IV, 29.2 percent of children aged 0-4 were living with both parents. A substantial proportion (26.6 percent) of children aged 0-17 were living with their mothers only although their fathers were alive. Also about 17.7 percent of the children were not living with either mother or father, even though both parents were alive. Children who were not living with a biological parent comprise 25.1 percent and children who had one or both parents dead amount to 21.7 percent of all children aged 0-17.

Table A6 shows the distribution of orphans and living arrangements of children by district. About 3 percent of the children aged 0-17 years were double-orphaned, 10.2 percent of them had lost their fathers and 0.6 percent of them had lost their mothers. About 8 percent of the children residing in North East district have lost both mother and father, followed by 6.1 percent in Kgalagadi North and the lowest percentage being at Sowa with 0.8 percent. The highest proportion (50.4 percent) of children in Gaborone live with both parents and the lowest proportion are in North East with 10.9 percent. It is evident that a significant percentage (26.6 percent) of the children in Botswana lives with their mothers only, even though their fathers are alive. The leading district in this case is Ngwaketse West with 35.1 percent, followed by Kgatleng with 31.5 percent and the lowest being Sowa with 12.5 percent.

3.4 Household Characteristics

3.4.1 Sources of Water Supply

Safe drinking water is a basic necessity for good health. Unsafe drinking water can be a significant carrier of disease such as trachoma, cholera, typhoid, and schistosomiasis. Further, drinking water can also be tainted with chemicals, physical and radical contaminants with harmful effects on human health.

Table 3. 7: Percentage distribution of household population according to main source of drinking water and percentage of household members using improved drinking water sources, Botswana, 2007

Drinking Water	Place of Residence			Total
	City/Town	Urban Village	Rural	
Improved sources				
Piped indoors	48.1	19.7	6.7	20.1
Tap in yard	37.7	64.7	26.6	41.7
Communal tap	12.1	12.0	45.0	26.8
Borehole	.0	.0	9.3	4.2
Rain water tank	.2	.0	.7	.4
Bottled water from stores	.4	.4	.3	.3
Neighbors	1.3	3.1	2.7	2.5
Total	99.8	99.9	91.3	96.1
Unimproved sources				
Bouser/Tanker	.0	.1	1.1	.5
Well	.0	.0	2.5	1.1
River/Stream	.1	.0	2.9	1.3
Dam/Pan/lake	.0	.0	2.1	.9
Spring water	.0	.0	.0	.0
Total	.2	.1	8.7	3.9
Number of household members	5,482	8,250	11,151	24,884

In Cities and Towns 48.1 percent of the population used drinking water that is piped indoors, 38 percent used water piped into their yard or plot. About 12 percent of the households population drew their drinking water from the public tap. In urban villages about 65 percent drew water from the tap in their yards, while 45 percent of the households in rural areas drew water from communal tap and 26.6 percent drew from the tap in the yard.

3.4.2 Collection of Water from Source

Access to drinking water may be particularly important for women, particularly in rural areas, as they are the ones who use water in their daily chores and bear the primary responsibility for carrying water, often for long distances.

Table 3. 8: Percentage distribution of households according to the person collecting water used in the household, Botswana, 2007

	Adult female	Adult male	Female child <15	Male child <15	DK/Missing	Total
Place of residence						
City/Town	50.9	42.0	5.0	1.8	0.3	100.0
Urban Village	61.9	28.3	4.8	4.2	0.7	100.0
Rural	45.5	45.1	4.2	4.1	1.1	100.0
Educational level of household head						
No education or pre-school	46.2	41.9	6.2	4.2	1.4	100.0
Primary	49.9	42.3	2.9	4.2	0.7	100.0
Secondary +	48.7	44.4	3.4	3.1	0.4	100.0
Non-formal/Non-standard	52.6	37.4	3.2	3.3	3.6	100.0
Total	48.2	42.6	4.3	3.9	1.0	100.0

About 48 percent of adult women are responsible for collecting water, as compared to 42.6 percent of men. In urban areas more female children (5.0 percent) than male children (1.8 percent) collect water used in the household.

3.4.3 Time Taken to Source of Water and Back

In Botswana the majority of people get drinking water from their premises especial in urban areas (86.2 percent), but most people still obtain their drinking water from the public taps. The results show that people do not walk or travel long distances to drinking sources and back. In rural areas on average it takes one close to 30 minutes to get water and return while in cities/towns and urban villages it takes about 10 minutes on average (Table 3.9).

Table 3. 9: Percentage distribution of households according to time to go to source of drinking water, get water and return, and mean time to source of drinking water, Botswana, 2007

Time to source of drinking water	Place of Residence			Number
	City/Town	Urban Village	Rural	
Water on premises	86.8	85.6	36.4	4,584
Less than 15 minutes	9.6	8.8	26.0	1,146
15 minutes to less than 30 minutes	1.9	2.2	13.1	471
30 minutes to less than 1 hour	0.5	1.2	9.4	316
1 hour or more	0.2	0.4	8.2	253
Missing	1.1	1.9	6.9	267
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	7,037
Mean time to source of drinking water (excluding those on premises)	9.3	13.1	28.0	
Number of households	1,888	21,733	2,970	7,031

3.4.4 Sanitation

Inadequate disposal of human excreta and personal hygiene is associated with a range of diseases including diarrheal disease and polio. Sanitary means of excreta disposal include: flush toilets connected to sewage systems or septic tanks, other flush toilets, improved pit latrines, and traditional pit latrines. The results indicate that 20.2 percent of the population of Botswana was using unimproved sanitation facilities (Figure 2).

Figure 2: Percentage household members using type of sanitary means of excreta disposal, Botswana, 2007

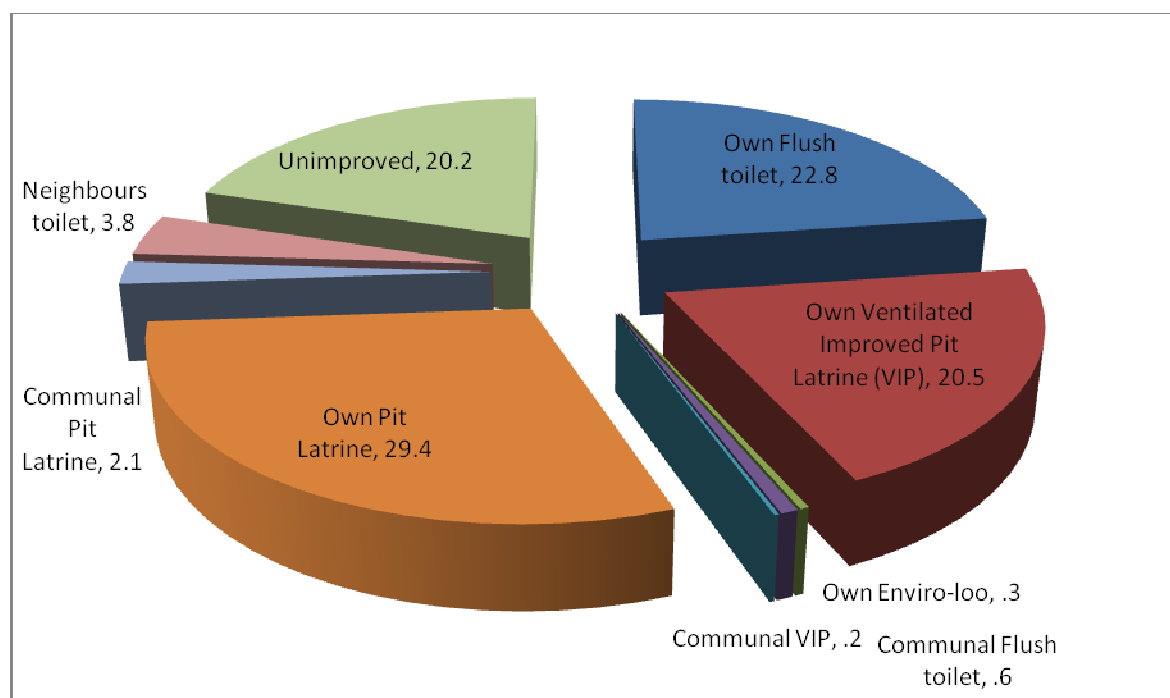


Table 3. 10: Percentage distribution of household population according to type of toilet used by the household and the percentage of household members using sanitary means of excreta disposal, Botswana, 2007

	Place of residence			
	City/Town	Urban Village	Rural	Total
Improved sanitation facility				
Own Flush toilet	55.9	21.3	7.6	22.8
Own Ventilated Improved Pit Latrine (VIP)	19.0	28.2	15.5	20.5
Own Enviro-loo	.8	.3	.1	.3
Communal Flush toilet	.4	.7	.7	.6
Communal VIP	.2	.0	.3	.2
Own Pit Latrine	21.2	39.0	26.4	29.4
Communal Pit Latrine	1.6	2.1	2.4	2.1
Neighbours' toilet	.3	4.0	5.4	3.8
Total	99.4	95.7	58.3	79.8
Unimproved sanitation facility				
None	.6	4.3	41.5	20.1
DK/Missing	.0	.0	.2	.1
Total	.6	4.3	41.7	20.2
Number of household members	5,482	8,250	11,151	24,884

Availability of toilet facilities in households ensures a more efficient and hygienic method of human waste disposal. Use of flush toilets was common in cities and towns (55.9 percent), followed by 21.3 percent in urban villages, while in rural households 7.6 percent of households have access to flush toilets. However there was an insignificant proportion (0.6 percent) of households who are not using any form of sanitary disposal of excreta. In rural areas 41.5 percent of households used the bush as their sanitary means of excreta disposal and 5.4 percent of households in rural areas used neighbour's toilet (Table 3.10).

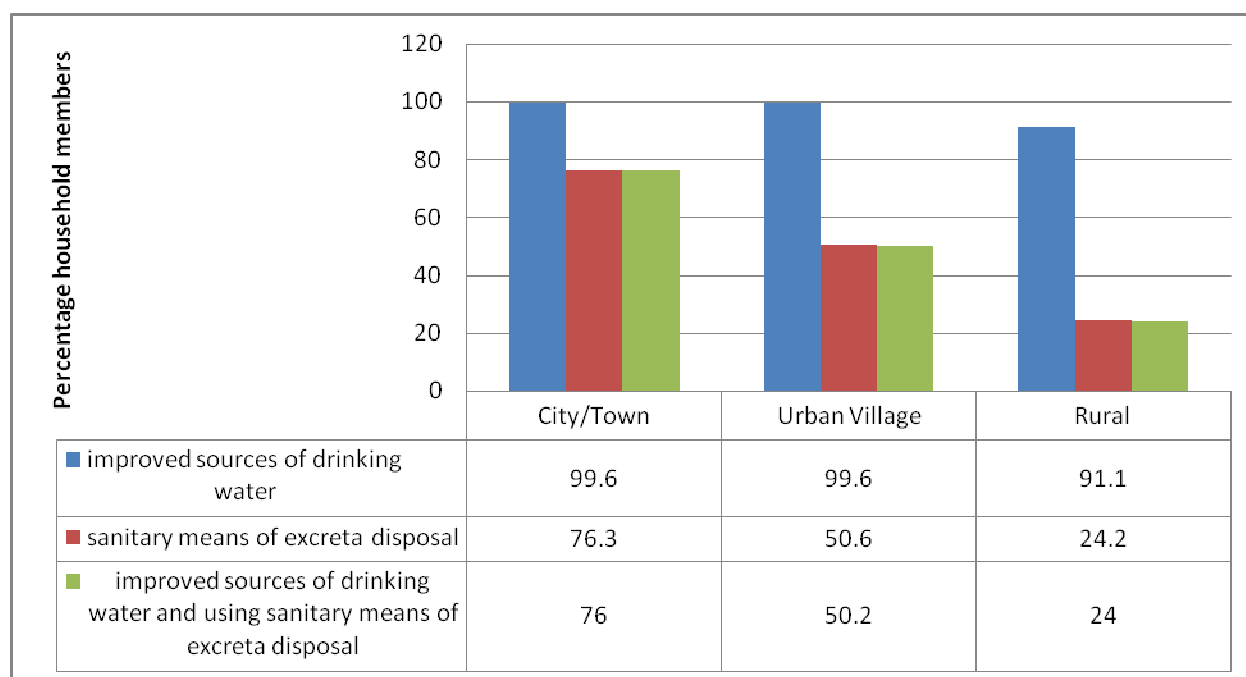
Table 3. 11: Percentage distribution of household population according to type of toilet used by the household and the percentage of household members using sanitary means of excreta disposal, Botswana, 2007

Sanitation facility	No education or pre-school	Primary	Secondary +	Non- formal/Non- standard	DK/missing	Total
Improved sanitation facility						
Own Flush toilet	4.8	13.7	45.4	8.2	13.7	22.8
Own Ventilated Improved Pit Latrine (VIP)	18.1	25.2	17.0	33.3	84.3	20.5
Own Pit Latrine	29.4	33.8	26.0	30.6	.0	29.4
Communal Pit Latrine	2.1	2.1	1.9	4.5	.0	2.1
Neighbour's toilet	4.9	4.8	2.2	3.1	2.0	3.8
Own Enviro-loo	.3	.5	.2	.0	.0	.3
Communal Flush toilet	.6	.4	.9	.0	.0	.6
Communal VIP	.3	.1	.2	.0	.0	.2
Total	60.4	80.6	93.8	79.6	100.0	79.8
Unimproved sanitation facility						
None	39.6	19.1	6.2	20.4	.0	20.1
DK/Missing	.0	.3	.0	.0	.0	.1
Total	39.6	19.4	6.2	20.4	.0	20.2
Percentage of population using sanitary means of excreta disposal	60.4	80.6	93.8	79.6	100.0	79.8
Number of household members	7,131	7,523	9,312	874	43	24,884

3.4.5 Sanitation and Drinking Water

Figure 3 indicates that 99.6 percent of the population in cities/towns and urban villages used improved source of drinking water compared to 91.1 percent in rural area. The proportion of households using sanitary means of excreta disposal in urban areas is higher (76.3 percent) than of those in urban villages (50.6 percent). Figure 3 further shows that almost all household members who have access to safe drinking water also use sanitary means of excreta disposal in all areas.

Figure 3. Percentage of household population using improved sources of drinking water and sanitary means of excreta disposal- Botswana 2007



3.4.6 Fuel use in Households

The results indicate that a majority of households had some form of fuel they use. There were three common sources of fuel used which are, gas, electricity and wood. There are some few households that use fuels like paraffin, bio gas, coal and solar power.

Table 3. 12: Percentage distribution of households according to type of cooking fuel, and percentage of households used solid fuels for cooking, Botswana 2007

Background characteristics	Electricity	Gas (LPG)	Paraffin	Solar Power	Bio Gas	Wood	Coal	Crop waste	Char coal	Don't know	Total	Solid fuels	Number of households
Place of residence													
City/Town	21.7	67.2	4.7	0.0	0.2	6.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.1	100.0	6.1	1,888
Urban Village	14.1	55.6	3.7	0.2	0.3	25.9	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	100.0	25.9	2,173
Rural	5.0	21.5	1.4	0.1	0.2	71.6	0.2	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	71.8	2,970
Educational level of household head													
No education or pre-school	3.7	16.1	2.2	0.1	0.1	77.5	0.2	0.1	0.0	0.0	100.0	77.8	1,546
Primary	7.5	37.4	2.4	0.0	0.4	52.2	0.2	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	52.4	1,851
Secondary +	18.9	61.4	3.8	0.2	0.2	15.4	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	100.0	15.4	3,468
Non-formal/Non-standard	7.8	26.3	2.0	0.0	0.0	63.9	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	63.9	160
DK/missing	21.5	52.8	0.0	0.0	0.0	25.7	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	25.7	5
Total	12.3	44.3	3.0	0.1	0.2	39.8	0.1	0.0	0.0	0.1	100.0	40.0	7,031

Table 3.12 shows that 44.3 percent of the households used gas for cooking while 39.8 percent use wood and 12.3 percent use electricity. The results further show that in cities/town and urban villages, most of the households were using gas and electricity while in rural areas about 71.6 percent of households use mostly wood for cooking..

Table 3. 13: Percentage of households using solid fuels for cooking by type of stove or fire, Botswana, 2007

Percentage of households using solid fuels for cooking:				
Background characteristics	Stove or fire with no chimney or hood	DK stove type/missing	Total	Number of households using solid fuels for cooking
Place of residence				
City/Town	96.3	3.7	100.0	115
Urban Village	98.9	1.1	100.0	563
Rural	98.8	1.2	100.0	2,134
Educational level of household head				
No education or pre-school	98.6	1.4	100.0	1,202
Primary	98.9	1.1	100.0	972
Secondary +	99.0	1.0	100.0	535
Non-formal/Non-standard	98.2	1.8	100.0	102
DK/missing	100.0	0.0	100.0	1
Total	98.8	1.2	100.0	2,812

There were about 2,812 households using solid fuels for cooking. Rural households are mostly using the solid fuel for cooking (75.6 percent). However, even in urban areas, households use solid fuel for cooking (24.1 percent).

3.5 Refuse Disposal

The collection of the garbage disposal is predominantly done in urban areas especially in Cities and Towns. Ninety percent of the household in Cities/Towns had their waste collected while in urban villages and rural areas it was 18.6 and 11.6 respectively. About 36 percent of households in urban villages and 34.3 percent in rural areas burn their waste. Households in urban villages 36.3 percent and 43.2 percent in rural areas put their garbage into a rubbish pit. Some households are still dumping their garbage along the roadside. Table 3.14 shows that in Cities and Towns 4.1 percent of the households, 8.2 percent in urban villages and 9.9 percent in rural households dump their garbage waste along the roadside.

Table 3. 14: Percentage distribution of households by mode of refuse disposal, according to selected characteristics of the household, Botswana, 2007

Background characteristics	Collected	Burn	Refuse Disposal			Total	Number of households
			Roadside dumping	Rubbish pit	Other		
Place of residence							
City/Town	89.8	2.4	4.1	3.0	0.7	100.0	5,482
Urban Village	18.6	36.4	8.2	36.3	0.5	100.0	8,250
Rural	11.6	34.3	9.9	43.2	1.0	100.0	11,151
Educational level of household head							
No education or pre-school	10.2	36.4	10.3	41.8	1.3	100.0	7,132
Primary	25.8	28.3	9.1	36.4	0.4	100.0	7,523
Secondary +	52.4	20.3	5.2	21.4	0.7	100.0	9,312
Non-formal/Non-standard	21.9	37.2	11.8	29.1	0.0	100.0	874
DK/missing	14.0	50.2	0.0	35.8	0.0	100.0	42
Total	31.1	28.0	8.1	32.0	0.8	100.0	24,884

CHAPTER 4: FERTILITY

4.1 Introduction

One of the major objectives of Botswana Family Health Survey is to provide an update on the levels and trends of fertility. In this survey, fertility estimation is based on the data about children ever born. The number of children ever born to a particular woman represents an aggregate of her lifetime fertility experience up to the point at which data was collected. The information on children ever born was collected by the question “How many children haveever born alive” This question concerns only live births, it excludes stillbirths and other foetal deaths. Although the use of this question yields a fairly reliable estimate, it has been observed that children are sometimes omitted especially by older women aged 35 and above. Children who have left home or have died are more likely to be omitted, and because of this tendency, the question is usually broken into three categories, “children living at home, children living elsewhere and children dead”.

Table 4. 1: Fertility Situation in Botswana 1984 to 2007

Indicator	1984	1988	1996	2007
Total Fertility Rate (TFR)	6.5	5.0	4.3	2.9
Average CEB to Women aged 45-49		5.8	5.5	4.5
Percentage of pregnant women		7.1	4.6	3.7
Total CEB		2.6	2.1	2.1
Total CEB to teenagers		0.3	0.3	1.0

The 1984, 1988 and 1996 Botswana Family Health Survey (BFHS) data shows that the total fertility rate (TFR) declined from 6.5 to 5.0 children per woman in 1988 as shown through Table 4.1. Table 4.1 further shows that TFR declined to 4.3 children per woman in 1996 to 2.9 children per woman in 2007. The average number of children born to women aged 15-49 decreased from 5.5 to 4.5 between 1996 BFHS and the 2007 BFHS. Overall, the average children ever born remained unchanged between the survey periods. The total number of children ever borne to teenagers increased from 0.3 to 1.0 between 1996 BFHS and 2007 BFHS. The decline of fertility rates, according to Rutenburg and Diamond (1983), represent the largest fertility decline in sub-Saharan Africa and one of the first examples of a sustained fertility transition in the region.

4.2 Current Pregnancy

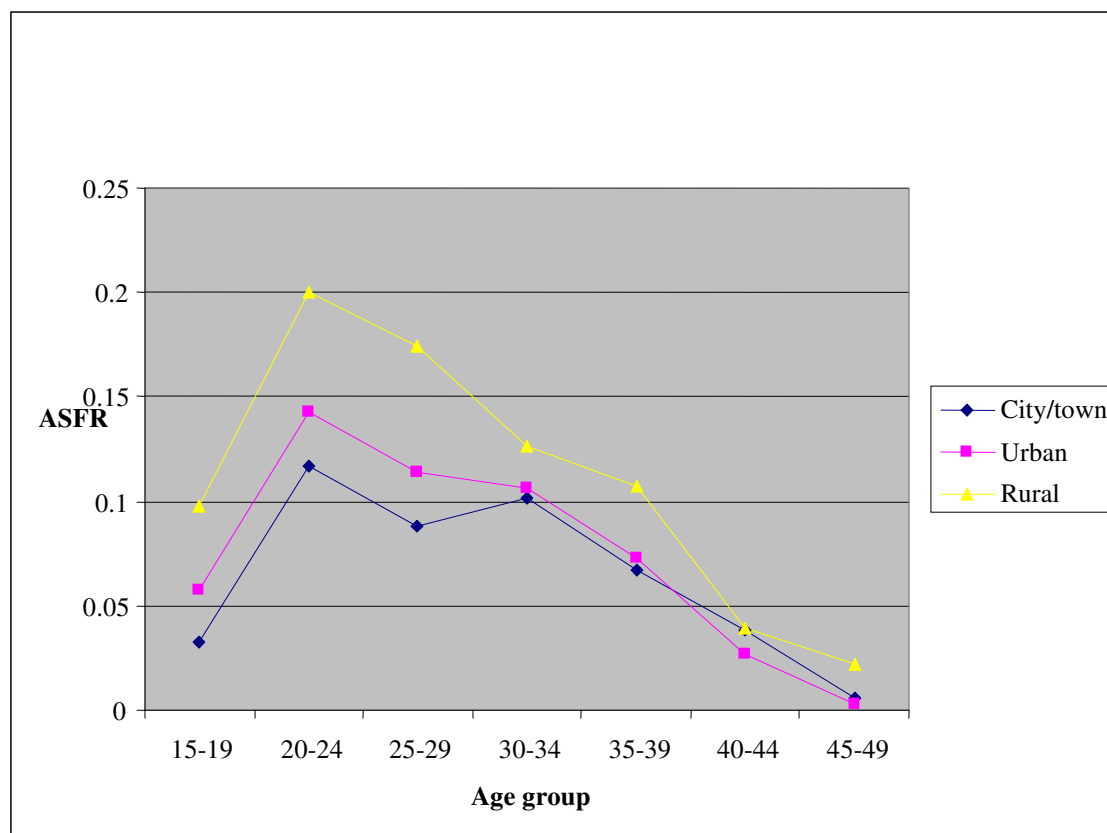
Current pregnancy is an indicator of immediate fertility and fertility in future. This indicates the need for both antenatal and postnatal services. It is indicated through Table 4.2 below that the overall percentage of women who were pregnant during survey period has been declining between the survey periods. The percentage of pregnant women declined from 7.1 percent to 4.6 percent between 1988 and 1996 BFHS. Moreover, the percentage of expectant women decreased further from 4.6 percent to 3.7 percent between 1996 and 2007 BFHS. The breakdown of current pregnancy by age group shows that, between 1996 and 2007, the percentage of pregnant teenagers declined from 3.3 percent to 1.7 percent. Furthermore, the highest percentage of pregnancies (5.8 percent) between 1996 and 2007 was recorded among the age group 30-34. On

the other hand, the lowest (less than 1) percentage of pregnancies was recorded among the age group 45-49.

Table 4. 2: Percentage of Women aged 15-49 years who were pregnant during BFHS II, BFHS III and BHFS IV in 2007

Age	BFHS II-1988	BFHS III-1996	BFHS-IV-2007
15-19	5.5	3.3	1.7
20-24	8.0	7.4	5.5
25-29	10.2	4.8	5.3
30-34	8.0	3.5	5.8
35-39	6.6	0.6	4.0
40-44	3.9	3.6	2.5
45-49	1.4	0.0	0.0
Total	7.1	4.6	3.7

Figure 3: Age specific fertility rate for three years preceding the survey by residence, Botswana 2007



The chart above shows that the rate of fertility increases in all three places of residence (city/town, urban and rural) from age group 15-19 to age group 20-24. Thereafter, the fertility rate dropped gradually in all places of residence until it reached the lowest point at age group 45-49. However, age specific fertility rate for the rural area is higher at all age groups, followed by ASFR for urban areas.

4.3 Children Ever Born

This is a summary of births accumulated for a period of 30 years (life time fertility). Life time fertility gives an indication of how average family varies/differ across different age groups. The assumption used here is that child bearing starts at 15 years and ends at 49 years.

The summary cumulated fertility shown on Table 4.3 below indicates that women in the age 15-19 gave birth on average 1.0 times. Furthermore, the results indicate that on average, women aged 45-49 gave birth 4.5 times. Although the level of fertility in the age group 45-49 has declined (from 5.5 to 4.5) between BFHS III and BFHS IV, the level of fertility remains relatively high for this age group. Moreover, the overall cumulated level of fertility has remained unchanged between BFHS III and BFHS IV at 2.1 births.

The distribution of children ever born by education of mother shows that those mothers with no education gave birth on average 4.2 times, followed by those with non-formal/non-standard curriculum with 3.9 births. The lowest average number of births is among those mothers with secondary or higher education (1.6 births).

As regards the distribution of births by mothers marital status, the BFHS IV results shows that the widowed mothers had the highest (4.0 births) number of children ever born, followed by the divorced with an average of 3.7 births. The never married mothers had the lowest (1.5 births) number of births.

The distribution of children ever born by employment status of the mother shows that mothers who are not working for cash had the highest (3.4) number of children ever born while those who are working for cash had an average of 2.1 births.

Overall, the average number of Children Ever Born remained unchanged between BFHS III in 1996 and BFHS IV in 2007. The average number of Children Ever Born for both BFHS III and BFHS IV is 2.1 births (Table 4.3).

Table 4. 3: Percentage distribution of all women and children ever born by some background characteristics, Botswana 2007

Background Characteristics	Number of Children Ever Born (CEB)											Total	Av. CEB
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10+		
Age													
15-19	90.2	8.4	1.3	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.0	0.0	-	0.0	0.0	100.0	1.0
20-24	47.4	35.8	13.9	2.2	0.4	0.1	0.1	0.0	-	0.0	0.1	100.0	1.2
25-29	22.5	32.2	26.6	11.8	4.9	1.6	0.3	0.0	0.1	0.0	0.1	100.0	1.7
30-34	9.5	23.9	29.2	19.1	11.2	4.2	1.6	0.5	0.5	0.2	0.0	100.0	2.3
35-39	4.5	15.2	23.4	22.5	14.1	8.9	6.3	3.3	1.0	0.4	0.3	100.0	3.1
40-44	4.9	7.7	15.9	22.2	17.6	15.2	7.3	4.2	2.4	1.4	1.2	100.0	3.8
45-49	2.2	7.0	12.0	16.0	17.7	14.4	13.3	5.7	4.8	3.1	3.7	100.0	4.5
Total	33.5	21.5	17.4	11.1	7.0	4.3	2.6	1.2	0.7	0.4	0.4	100.0	2.1
Education of Mother													
No education	11.4	9.7	10.4	11.9	11.4	13.9	13.4	6.0	4.0	4.5	3.5	100.0	4.2
Pre-school	33.3	33.3	11.1	11.1	0.0	0.0	0.0	11.1	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	2.0
Primary	12.4	11.4	17.6	17.4	15.1	12.0	7.2	3.5	2.0	0.6	0.7	100.0	3.3
Secondary	40.4	25.0	17.9	9.5	4.7	1.6	0.5	0.2	0.1	0.0	0.0	100.0	1.6
Non-formal/Non-standard	27.3	6.8	6.8	13.6	6.8	6.8	11.4	9.1	4.5	0.0	6.8	100.0	3.9
DK/missing	0.0	0.0	100.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	2.0
Total	33.5	21.5	17.4	11.1	7.0	4.3	2.6	1.2	0.7	0.4	0.4	100.0	2.1
Marital Status of Mother													
Never married	52.2	21.2	12.8	6.5	3.3	2.2	1.0	0.4	0.2	0.1	0.1	100.0	1.5
Married	5.4	16.4	23.3	20.2	13.3	8.9	5.9	2.4	1.9	1.2	1.1	100.0	3.2
Living together	12.6	25.9	23.6	15.2	10.1	5.3	3.4	2.1	1.2	0.3	0.4	100.0	2.5
Separated	5.9	23.5	20.6	11.8	23.5	5.9	8.8	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	2.8
Divorced	1.8	10.7	30.4	19.6	8.9	12.5	3.6	0.0	5.4	3.6	3.6	100.0	3.7
Widowed	0.8	10.7	15.6	17.2	22.1	12.3	9.8	4.1	1.6	2.5	3.3	100.0	4.0
Total	33.5	21.5	17.4	11.1	7.0	4.3	2.6	1.2	0.7	0.4	0.4	100.0	2.1
Employment Status of Mother													
Working for cash	19.8	25.9	24.6	13.9	8.4	3.7	1.9	0.9	0.6	0.1	0.3	100.0	2.1
Not working for cash	10.6	14.6	20.0	14.0	11.4	12.6	8.6	3.1	2.0	1.4	1.7	100.0	3.4
Not working	43.4	19.5	13.0	9.2	5.8	3.9	2.4	1.2	0.7	0.5	0.4	100.0	2.0
Total	33.5	21.5	17.4	11.1	7.0	4.3	2.6	1.2	0.7	0.4	0.4	100.0	2.1

4.4 Teenage Fertility

Table 4.4 indicates that majority of teenagers who have ever had children had only one child. Furthermore, a higher proportion of those who have children are aged between 18 and 19 years. However, there were a number of teenagers who have had two or more children. Moreover, the teenagers who had children were either married or living with their partners. It is further shown through Table 4.4 that majority (over 40 percent) of teenagers who had children were working but not paid in cash.

Table 4. 4: Percentage Distribution of teenagers aged 15-19 by number of children ever born and Background characteristics, Botswana 2007

Background Characteristics	Number of children ever born				Total teenagers	Av. CEB
	0	1	2+	Total		
Age						
15	99.2	0.8	0.0	100.0	255	1.00
16	98.6	1.4	0.0	100.0	276	1.00
17	88.6	9.1	2.4	100.0	251	1.01
18	86.7	11.7	1.7	100.0	238	1.01
19	71.2	18.3	10.4	100.0	262	1.06
Total	88.7	8.3	3.0		1282	1.02
Education						
No education	55.0	15.0	30.0	100.0	17	1.18
Pre-school	100.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	3	1.00
Primary	70.9	14.9	14.2	100.0	136	1.09
Secondary	91.6	7.4	1.1	100.0	1121	1.01
Non formal/Non standard Curriculum	100.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	5	1.00
Total	88.7	8.3	3.0	100.0	1282	1.02
Marital Status						
Never married	91.4	6.1	2.5	100.0	1208.0	1.01
married	40.0	20.0	40.0	100.0	4.0	1.25
Living together	48.0	42.7	9.3	100.0	70.0	1.07
Divorced	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.00
Separated	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.00
Widowed	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.00
Total	88.7	8.3	3.0	100.0	1282	1.02
Employment Status						
Not working for cash	53.8	15.4	30.8	100.0	11	1.18
Not working	89.6	8.1	2.3	100.0	1230	1.01
Working for cash	75.0	11.4	13.6	100.0	41	1.07
Total	88.7	8.3	3.0	100.0	1,282	1.02

Overall school dropout due to pregnancy among teenagers was about 4 percent, (53 out of 1265). However, among those teenagers who left school due to pregnancy, only teenagers aged 17 and above did eventually return to school.

Table 4. 5: Distribution of teenagers 15-19 ever attended school, experienced school drop-out due to pregnancy and those who were readmitted by age, Botswana 2007

Age	Left school due to pregnancy	Was readmitted	Teenagers ever attended	Total teenagers
15	1	-	253	255
16	3	-	271	276
17	11	3	250	251
18	12	4	236	238
19	26	11	255	262
Total	53	18	1,265	1,282

CHAPTER 5: MORTALITY

5.1 Infant and Child Mortality

One of the overarching goals of the MDGs and the World Fit for Children is to reduce infant and under-five mortality. Monitoring progress towards this goal is an important but difficult objective. Measuring childhood mortality may seem easy, but attempts using direct questions, such as “Has anyone in this household died in the past 12 months?” give inaccurate results. On the other hand, using direct measures of child mortality from birth histories is time consuming and complicated. Demographers have therefore had to devise ways to measure childhood mortality indirectly. These ‘indirect methods’ minimize the pitfalls of memory lapses, inexact or misinterpreted definitions, and poor interviewing technique.

The *infant mortality rate* is the probability of dying before the first birthday. The *under five mortality rate* is the probability of dying before the fifth birthday. In BFHS 2007, infant and under five mortality rates are calculated based on an indirect estimation technique; (Coale and Demeny Models of Brass techniques). The data used in the estimation are: the mean number of children ever born (average parity) for five year age groups of women from age 15 to 49, and the proportion of these children who have died. The technique converts these data into probabilities of dying by taking account of both the mortality risks to which children are exposed and their length of exposure to the risk of dying.

Table 5. 1: Infant, neonatal, post-neonatal, child mortality rate (CMR) and under five mortality rate by place of residence, Botswana 2007

Place of residence	IMR	Neonatal	Post-neonatal	CMR	Under five mortality
Cities/Towns	54	24.2	17.3	18	72
Urban Villages	44	30.7	15.7	13	56
Rural	70	41.6	21.9	28	96
Total	57	34.2	18.9	20	76

Table 5.1 provides summary estimates of under 5 mortality by residence. The infant mortality rate is estimated at 57 per thousand, while the probability of dying under-5 mortality rate is around 76 per thousand. The probabilities of dying before attaining age five is highest (96 deaths per thousand live births) in the rural residence as compared to 56 and 72 deaths per thousands live births in urban villages and cities/towns respectively. As regards infant mortality rate, the highest, 70 deaths per thousands live births, were recorded again in the rural area while the second highest, 54 deaths, were recorded in cities/towns. Child mortality rates were lowest, 13 deaths per thousand live births, in urban villages.

CHAPTER 6: FAMILY PLANNING

6.1 Introduction

Family planning activities have been integrated into maternal and child health services in Botswana since the beginning of the national programme in 1973. The policy of the Government affirms that these services be available to every family and it is a basic right of each family to determine the number of children to have and when to have them.

Data on family planning is very important as it serves as a key measure for assessing the success of the national family planning programme. Family planning services are available at all levels of health care including private clinics, hospitals, doctors and pharmacies.

This chapter analyses several aspects of family planning knowledge and use among Botswana men and women; focusing on the specific method known and used. It also focuses on the background characteristics of users like place of residence, age, marital status and level of education.

Levels of knowledge and use of family planning methods can be used to evaluate the acceptability and success of a family planning programme. The information about knowledge and use of family planning is of practical use to policy and programme staff, it can be used as a guide in the improvement and expansion of family planning services.

6.2 Knowledge of Family Planning Methods

Knowledge of family planning methods and sources of supply are crucial elements in an individual or couple's decision whether to use family planning and which method to use. Consequently, improved knowledge of family planning methods will be followed by greater use.

Data on knowledge of family planning was obtained by asking men and women *whether they had heard of a described method that a couple can use to delay or avoid pregnancy*. If the respondent knew the method, they were then asked if they had ever used it and where they can get it. Respondents were then asked to mention any other method that the interviewer did not describe.

Table 6. 1: Percentage distribution of women aged 12-49 years by knowledge of contraceptive methods and type of method, Botswana, 2007

	Place of residence			Educational level of members					Total
	City/ Town	Urban Village	Rural	No education	Pre- school	Primary	Secondary	Non- formal/ Non- standard	
Method									
Pill	90.8	89.6	83.8	75.5	87.5	72.2	94.3	83.7	87.8
IUCD	83.6	77.6	66.0	48.5	47.8	51.6	85.3	67.4	75.0
Injection	89.6	88.6	83.8	78.3	92.3	71.0	93.5	90.1	87.1
Diaphragm/ Jelly	57.5	55.9	43.2	16.4	19.3	22.8	64.8	28.6	51.7
Condom	97.9	97.2	94.7	88.0	100.0	93.1	98.3	91.7	96.5
Female Sterilization	66.9	66.4	52.6	30.5	52.5	35.6	73.1	44.7	61.5
Male Sterilization	58.3	58.2	43.2	20.3	52.5	26.7	64.6	22.2	52.7
Periodic Abstinence	62.3	59.8	45.6	25.0	52.5	32.0	66.0	19.0	55.2
Withdrawal	59.8	58.0	41.4	21.0	11.6	28.8	63.2	39.2	52.4
Other	4.8	4.6	3.1	1.2	-	1.8	5.2	-	4.1
Any traditional method	77.2	75.2	60.9	42.2	64.0	47.1	81.1	48.4	70.5
Any modern method	98.9	98.7	97.3	94.0	100.0	95.6	99.5	91.7	98.3
Any method	98.9	98.8	97.4	94.2	100.0	95.7	99.6	91.7	98.3
Number of women	1,899	2,474	2,543	345	7	1,719	4,806	37	6,915

Table 6.1 shows percentages of all women who knew a specific method. It is observed that 98.3 percent of females know at least one family planning method. This is an increase from 75 percent in 1984 to 98.3 percent in 2007. The highest percentage of women knew about the condom (96.5 percent). Just above 97 percent of the people living in the cities, towns and urban villages knew the condom whereas for those who live in the rural areas 94 percent of them have some knowledge about the condom. The method that is least known by women aged 12-49 years is diaphragm or jelly. Only 57 percent of the women who reside in the cities and towns know the diaphragm and the comparative figure for those who reside in the rural areas is 43 percent.

The distribution of women aged 12-49 years by knowledge of contraception; type of method and level of education shows that 94.2 percent of women who have never been to school know at least one contraception method. Knowledge of condom is high amongst all categories of

education level (96.5 percent). When disaggregating the data at district level, it is revealed that in all the districts, more than 95 percent of the women aged 12-49 years knew at least one method. The most common known across all the districts is the condom and the least common method is the diaphragm (Table A11).

Table 6. 2 Percentage of men aged 12-49 years by knowledge of contraceptive methods by type of method, Botswana, 2007

	Place of residence			Educational level of members					Total
	City/Town	Urban Village	Rural	No education	Pre-school	Primary	Secondary	Non-formal/Non-standard	
Method									
Pill	82.5	75.8	64.2	51.4	100.0	51.6	83.7	81.0	72.9
IUCD	71.2	67.9	50.2	27.7	78.1	32.8	77.0	45.9	61.6
Injection	79.7	76.0	66.7	56.7	78.1	53.0	83.2	78.2	73.3
Diaphragm/Jelly	50.7	46.5	29.8	9.4	78.1	11.1	56.4	19.4	40.8
Condom	96.5	96.4	93.8	91.4	100.0	90.5	97.7	100.0	95.4
Female Sterilization	64.1	58.8	43.2	22.9	78.1	26.0	68.4	57.3	53.9
Male Sterilization	58.1	54.1	39.0	16.2	78.1	21.5	63.7	40.9	49.0
Periodic Abstinence	59.1	54.0	38.4	20.6	59.0	26.5	61.3	37.1	49.0
Withdrawal	62.3	55.2	38.5	24.7	45.7	24.8	63.5	41.1	50.3
Other	3.2	2.7	1.2	0.2	-	0.8	3.1	-	2.2
Any traditional method	75.9	70.6	56.0	41.8	59.0	41.0	78.8	63.5	66.1
Any modern method	97.9	97.4	95.3	93.5	100.0	92.9	98.5	100.0	96.7
Any method	97.9	97.5	95.4	94.1	100.0	93.1	98.5	100.0	96.8
Number of men	1,624	2,008	2,470	432	5	1,618	4,011	34	6,098

Table 6.2 depicts the percentage of men by knowledge of contraception method. The results show that 96.8 percent of men that were interviewed know at least one method. Over 90 percent of men that were interviewed reported that they have some knowledge about the condom. The results reveal that the method that is least known by the respondents was the diaphragm Male respondents who have been up to pre-school level have more knowledge about family planning methods than other men in other education level categories. The lowest percentage of men who knew about most of the family planning methods fell in the category of those with no education.

Table A12 shows that there is a similar trend of knowledge of contraceptive methods by men across all the districts in Botswana. Men aged 12-49 years in all the districts reported that they

were quite aware of the contraceptive methods. In all entire districts more than 95 percent of them knew at least one method, with exceptions of Kweneng West and Kgalagadi North with 89.1 and 91 percent respectively. Less than 50 percent of the men who responded reported that they knew the diaphragm and the highest percentage of them knew the condom.

6.3 Ever Use of Family Planning Methods

Table 6.3 shows that 92.5 percent of females aged 15-19 years had ever used contraception method and 6.5 percent of them had one child at the time of first use. It is evident that across all age groups, the highest proportion of women who had ever used a contraception method had no living children at the time of first use. In total, 62.8 percent of the women reported that they had no living children at the time of first use of the contraception method, 22.4 percent reported that they had one living child while 8.4 percent reported that they had two living children at the time of first use of the contraception method.

Table 6. 3: Percentage distribution of females who have ever used contraception by the number of living children at the time of first use of contraception and current age group, Botswana 2007

Age	No. of children at the time of first use							Total
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6+	
12-14	100.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	10
15-19	92.5	6.5	0.8	-	-	0.3	-	372
20-24	83.0	13.4	3.1	0.3	0.1	0.1	0.1	1,144
25-29	70.5	20.6	6.5	1.6	0.7	0.1	-	1,124
30-34	55.3	28.9	10.1	3.6	1.2	0.4	0.4	897
35-39	44.9	33.9	12.0	5.6	1.7	1.0	0.8	708
40-44	38.9	27.9	16.2	7.7	6.9	1.6	0.8	494
45-49	29.9	27.4	17.8	12.3	5.5	3.6	3.6	365
Total	62.8	22.4	8.4	3.4	1.7	0.7	0.5	100.0
Total	3,211	1,146	432	176	86	35	28	5,114

6.4 Current use of Family Planning Methods

Table 6.4 gives the distributions of current use of family planning methods by men and women aged 12-49 years. This data was obtained by asking the respondents whether they had ever used a method and for a “yes” response, the interviewer probed further and asked whether they were currently using it.

Table 6. 4: Percentage distribution of women aged 12-49 years by current use of contraceptive methods by type of method, Botswana, 2007

	Place of residence			Educational level of members					Total
	City/Town	Urban Village	Rural	No education	Pre-school	Primary	Secondary	Non-formal/Non-standard	
Method									
Pill	5.1	5.6	7.3	5.6	11.6	5.9	6.2	6.1	6.1
IUCD	0.9	1.0	0.4	0.6	-	0.9	0.7	-	0.8
Injection	4.4	5.9	9.4	9.3	-	7.3	6.5	2.2	6.8
Diaphragm/Jelly	0.8	0.7	0.4	0.7	-	0.4	0.7	-	0.6
Condom	49.5	42.5	35.1	25.2	24.0	27.4	48.2	13.6	41.7
Female Sterilization	2.4	1.8	2.1	3.0	-	2.6	1.8	6.3	2.1
Male Sterilization	0.2	0.1	0.1	-	-	0.0	0.2	-	0.1
Periodic Abstinence	2.2	2.1	1.2	0.9	-	1.0	2.1	2.9	1.8
Withdrawal	0.5	0.7	0.5	0.2	-	0.4	0.7	2.0	0.6
Other	0.4	0.3	0.0	-	-	0.1	0.3	-	0.2
Any traditional method	3.2	3.0	1.8	1.7	-	1.5	3.1	4.9	2.6
Any modern method	57.0	50.7	47.3	41.4	24.0	38.6	56.6	28.2	51.2
Any method	58.7	52.6	48.4	43.0	24.0	39.5	58.4	33.1	52.8
Number of women	1,899	2,474	2,543	345	7	1,719	4,806	37	6,915

Table 6.4 reveals that 52.8 percent of the women that were interviewed used at least one method. Only 2.6 percent of the women used traditional method as compared to the 51.2 percent who were using any modern method. This shows that the women were not keen to use the traditional methods because it is shown in Table 6.1 that a high percentage (70.5 percent) of them had some knowledge about the traditional methods but were not using them. About 42 percent of all the women interviewed reported that they were using condom, followed by those who reported that they relied on the pill with 6.1 percent. Condom use was high in urban areas as is shown to be 49.5 percent in cities/towns and 42.5 in urban villages and lowest in rural areas with 35.1 percent. As compared to urban areas, rural areas had a higher proportion of women on the pill at 7.3 percent whereas for cities /towns and urban villages it was 5.1 and 5.6 respectively.

Respondents were asked whether they were currently using any method to avoid pregnancy, and those who said yes were then asked which method they were using. Sixty-eight percent of those who lived in Kgalagadi North reported that they were using at least one method, followed by 64.6 percent of those who lived in Orapa, whilst the lowest percentage of 36 was observed in Kweneng West. The highest percentage (50.3 percent) of women in Gaborone was using condoms and the lowest percentage of women using condoms was in Kweneng West with 22.8 percent (Table A 13).

Table 6. 5: Percentage distribution of men aged 12-49 years by current use of contraceptive methods by type of method, Botswana, 2007

	Place of residence			Educational level of members					Total
	City/Town	Urban Village	Rural	No education	Pre-school	Primary	Secondary	Non-formal/Non-standard	
Method									
Pill	2.8	3.9	2.4	3.1	-	2.8	3.1	5.6	3.0
IUCD	0.2	0.3	0.1	0.2	-	0.0	0.3	-	0.2
Injection	1.2	1.3	1.7	3.1	-	0.9	1.4	7.2	1.4
Diaphragm/Jelly	0.6	0.7	0.5	1.5	-	0.8	0.4	-	0.6
Condom	54.4	44.7	39.3	42.5	19.1	30.0	51.6	36.4	45.1
Female Sterilization	1.4	0.7	0.6	0.9	-	0.5	0.9	12.9	0.9
Male Sterilization	0.5	-	0.1	0.2	-	0.1	0.2	-	0.2
Periodic Abstinence	3.7	2.8	2.0	1.2	-	1.2	3.6	-	2.7
Withdrawal	0.7	0.7	0.4	0.5	-	0.5	0.6	-	0.6
Other	0.3	0.3	0.0	0.2	-	0.1	0.3	-	0.2
Any traditional method	4.6	3.9	2.6	1.8	-	2.0	4.4	-	3.6
Any modern method	58.1	47.7	41.3	46.3	19.1	32.6	54.3	49.2	47.9
Any method	60.8	49.9	42.9	48.1	19.1	33.8	56.8	49.2	50.0
Number of men	1,624	2,008	2,470	432	5	1,618	4,011	34	6,098

The respondents were asked whether they had ever used a method and the interviewers' probed further to find out if they were currently using the method if at all they had ever used the method. It is evident from Table 6.5 that 50 percent of the men that were interviewed were using at least one of the stated methods. The highest percentage of them (45.1 percent) reported that they were using a condom, followed by those who said they were using a pill with 3 percent and the lowest being those who said they were using IUCD and male sterilisation with 0.2 percent. Distribution of the men, who were currently using a method by educational level, shows that the highest

percentage of those who have been up to secondary school were using condoms and the lowest percentage of them were using male sterilization. The results show that 42.5 percent of the respondents who have never been to school reported that they were using condoms and the lowest percentage of them (0.2 percent) revealed that they were using male sterilization. The most popular contraception method for men residing in towns and cities was the condom (54.4 percent), followed by the periodic abstinence with 3.7 percent and the least used method was the IUCD with 0.2 percent.

Table A14 portrays that 80 percent of men aged 12-49 years and living in Jwaneng reported that they were using at least one method to avoid pregnancy and only 28.1 percent of those residing in Kweneng West reported use of at least one contraceptive method. Condom use was significantly high in Jwaneng at 73.2 percent followed by Orapa with 63.3 percent. The use of IUCD was insignificant in all the districts in Botswana. As compared to other districts injections are mostly used by men in Kgalagadi North followed by those in Kgalagadi South with 18.6 and 13 percent respectively and these are not commonly used in Chobe, with only 2.6 percent of the men using them.

Table 6.6 shows that majority of females (61.3 percent) currently using the pill as a contraceptive method reported that they were using Nordette, followed by the Microval at 6.8 percent. The same picture is being portrayed when disaggregating the data at district level (Table A15).

Table 6. 6: Percentage distribution of females currently using pill by pill brand, source and residence, Botswana, 2007

	Pill Brand				Not able to show	Total
	Nordette	Microval	Triphasil	Other		
(a) Source						
Health post	57.1	14.3	-	-	28.6	7
Clinic	63.2	5.9	1.2	6.5	23.2	340
Hospital	50.0	14.3	-	14.3	21.4	14
Private doctor/hospital/clinic	50.0	25.0	-	-	25.0	4
Pharmacy/shops	53.5	8.5	2.8	19.7	15.5	71
Traditional practitioner	100.0	-	-	-	-	1
Work place	100.0	-	-	-	-	1
Recreational place	100.0	-	-	-	-	1
	61.3	6.8	1.4	8.7	21.8	439
(b) Residence						
Urban	59.5	5.8	1.5	11.6	21.6	259
Rural	63.9	8.3	1.1	4.4	22.2	180
Total	61.3	6.8	1.4	8.7	21.8	439

6.5 Sources of Family Planning Methods

Table 6.7 below shows that the pill is mostly sourced from clinics, followed by the health post with 16 percent and 13 percent respectively. The condom is available almost everywhere. Amongst people who obtained contraceptive methods from traditional doctors, the highest percentage (67 percent) of them collected the male condom.

Table 6.7: Percentage distribution of current users of contraceptives by source of method and specific method, Botswana, 2007

Source	Current Method							Total
	Pill	IUD	Injection	Male condom	Female condom	Traditional	Norplant	
Health post	13	2	13	72	0	0	0	54
Clinic	16	2	19	63	1	0	0	2,120
Hospital	5	4	14	75	2	0	1	309
Private doctor/hospital/clinic	12	32	35	18	0	0	3	34
Pharmacy/shops	10	0	0	89	1	0	0	741
Traditional practitioner	4	4	0	67	0	25	0	24
Work place	0	0	0	99	1	0	0	227
Recreational place	2	0	0	95	2	0	2	62
Friends/relatives	0	0	0	88	0	6	6	33
Other	0	0	0	85	0	8	8	13
Don't know	0	0	0	100	0	0	0	24
Total	12	2	13	72	1	0	0	3,641

6.6 Non-use of Family Planning Methods

Table 6.8 shows that among those reported not using any contraceptive method, 2.7 percent reported health problems as the main reasons for not using any method. With respect to marital status, the never married females contributed the majority at 42.2 percent, followed by the living together at 24.2 percent then those who are married followed closely at 23.5 percent of those not using any contraceptive method.

Table 6. 8: Percentage distribution of females not currently using contraceptive method with intentions of not using it in the future by main reason for not intending to use by marital status, Botswana, 2007

Main reason	Married	Living together	Separated	Divorced	Widowed	Never married	Total
Want a child	48.6	27.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	24.3	37
Lack of knowledge	0.0	66.7	0.0	0.0	0.0	33.3	3
Opposed to family planning	14.3	42.9	0.0	0.0	0.0	42.9	14
Husband/Partner disapproved	57.1	42.9	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	14
Other disapprove	25.0	25.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	50.0	4
Health problems	23.2	36.2	0.0	2.9	4.3	33.3	69
Difficult to get	0.0	100.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	1
Cost too much	100.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	1
Inconvenient to use	0.0	44.4	11.1	0.0	0.0	44.4	9
Not effective	20.0	0.0	0.0	20.0	20.0	40.0	5
Infrequent sex	0.0	11.8	5.9	0.0	8.8	73.5	34
Fatalistic	0.0	33.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	66.7	3
Religion	41.7	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	58.3	12
Postpartum/breastfeeding	0.0	50.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	50.0	4
Menopause/Subfecund	37.5	18.8	3.1	0.0	12.5	28.1	32
Not yet sexually active/not involved, still young	6.3	6.3	3.1	9.4	15.6	59.4	32
abstaining	17.2	13.8	0.0	3.4	6.9	58.6	29
Other	33.3	0.0	0.0	33.3	0.0	33.3	3
Total	23.5	24.2	1.6	2.6	5.9	42.2	306

6.7 Intention to use Family Planning Methods

Table 6.9 shows that among females not currently using any contraceptive method but intending to use in future, male condom is the most preferred method at 44.8 percent, followed by Injection with 23.2 percent the pill being the third preferred method with 21.1 percent. The majority of the females not using a contraceptive method but intending to use one in the future are mostly aged between age-group 20-29 years representing 22.0 percent while age group 20-24 represent 21.8 percent.

Table 6. 9: Percentage distribution of females not using contraceptive method but intend to use in future by preferred method and age, Botswana, 2007

Preferred method	Age-group									Total Number of women
	12-14	15-19	20-24	25-29	30-34	35-39	40-44	45-49	Total	
Pill	0.9	12.1	29.3	19.0	16.4	8.6	4.3	9.5	21.1	116
IUD	0.0	8.3	16.7	41.7	16.7	8.3	8.3	0.0	2.2	12
Injection	1.6	18.0	21.9	31.3	8.6	12.5	4.7	1.6	23.2	128
Diaphragm/foam/ jelly	0.0	0.0	0.0	50.0	0.0	0.0	50.0	0.0	0.4	2
Male condom	0.8	10.1	20.6	16.2	15.4	19.4	8.1	9.3	44.8	247
Female condom	0.0	12.5	18.8	31.3	6.3	6.3	12.5	12.5	2.9	16
Female sterilization	0.0	0.0	0.0	25.0	25.0	31.3	18.8	0.0	2.9	16
Male sterilization	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	0.0	0.0	0.2	1
Traditional	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	0.0	0.0	0.2	1
Periodic abstinence	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	0.0	0.2	1
Prolonged abstinence	0.0	50.0	25.0	25.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.7	4
Withdrawal	0.0	0.0	0.0	50.0	50.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.4	2
Norplant	0.0	0.0	0.0	50.0	0.0	50.0	0.0	0.0	0.7	4
Other	0.0	0.0	100.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.2	1
Total	0.9	12.2	21.8	22.0	13.8	15.4	7.1	6.9	100.0	551

6.8 Trends in Family Planning Knowledge and Use

Table 6.10 shows the trends of current use of family planning methods during the period 1984-2007. Use of contraceptive methods has substantially increased during this period. Condom was the most popular contraception used among women aged 12-49 in 2007. The use of condom increased from 1 percent in 1984 to 41.7 percent in 2007. Withdrawal was not a common method in the previous years but came to 0.6 percent in 2007. Use of traditional methods decreased from 8 percent to 2.6 percent in 2007. Use of pill has dropped from 17.7 percent in 1996 to 6.1 percent in 2007.

Table 6. 10: Percentage Distribution of women aged 12-49 years by current use of specific contraception method for 1984, 1988, 1996 and 2007

	Year			
	1985	1988	1996	2007
Method				
Pill	8.5	17.7	17.7	6.1
IUD	4.1	9.5	3.1	0.8
Injection	1.1	3.2	5.7	6.8
Diaphragm	0	0	0	0.6
Condom	1	1.3	11.3	41.7
Female Sterilization	1.2	2.2	2.4	2.1
Male Sterilization	0	0	0	0.1
Traditional method	7.5	8	0.3	2.6
Periodic Abstinence	0	0	0	1.8
Withdrawal	0	0	0	0.6
Other	0.1	0	0.9	0.2

CHAPTER 7: MATERNAL AND CHILD CARE

This chapter presents findings from the 2007 BFHS IV areas of importance to maternal and child health, including information on antenatal, delivery, common childhood illnesses and their treatment. Data were obtained for all live births that occurred in the five years preceding the survey.

7.1 Pregnancy Care

Early and regular checkups by trained medical providers are very important in assessing the physical status of women during pregnancy. The BFHS collected data on the care women received during pregnancy, including information on antenatal care and tetanus toxoid vaccination. .

7.1.1 Antenatal Care Coverage

Table 7.1 presents the coverage of antenatal care services for births taking place during the 2 year period before the survey.

Table 7. 1: Percentage distribution of women aged 12-49 who gave birth in the two years preceding the survey by type of personnel providing antenatal care, Botswana, 2007

Provider	Total
Medical doctor	6.4
Nurse/midwife	87.2
Auxiliary midwife	.5
Traditional birth attendant	1.1
Relative/Friend	.6
Spiritual healer	.2
No antenatal care received	4.0
Any skilled personnel	94.1
Number of ANC visits	
1-4 times	21.1
More than 4 times	73.3
No antenatal care/ traditional care/ missing	5.5
Time of first antenatal care visits	
1-4 month	53.0
More than 4 months	41.3
No antenatal care/ traditional care/ missing	5.6
Total Births	1,397

Table 7.1 shows the percentage distribution of women who had a live birth in the two years preceding the survey by source of antenatal care for the most recent birth. In obtaining the information on source, information was recorded of all persons a woman had seen for antenatal care. However, for cases where more than one person was seen, only the provider with highest qualifications was considered in the analysis. The results indicate that a relatively high percentage of women received antenatal care from a trained health professional (94.1 percent),

with 6.6 percent received from medical doctor and 87.2 percent from nurse/midwife or auxiliary midwife. Some mothers (1.1 percent) received antenatal care from a traditional birth attendant (TBA), while 4.0 percent received no antenatal care and only 0.2 percent received antenatal care from spiritual healers

The results in Table 7.1 further indicates that most women received antenatal care from medical providers for 94.1 percent of the births during the two year period before the survey and about 4 percent reported that they did not receive any care. Women received antenatal care (i.e. made more than 4 visits to a provider) for about 73 percent of births during the 2 year period. Table 7.1 shows that most women who received antenatal care began seeing a provider within the first four months. Mothers saw a provider for care for the first time before the fifth month of pregnancy for 53 percent of last birth for which antenatal care was reported.

7.1.2 Tetanus Toxoid

Tetanus toxoid injections are given to women during pregnancy to prevent death from neonatal tetanus. In BFHS IV, information was collected on the number of doses of tetanus toxoid vaccine the mother received and on the source from which the tetanus toxoid vaccination was received for all births during the two year period prior to the survey.

Table 7.2 shows that pregnant women received the tetanus toxoid vaccine in the case of about 70 percent of births during the two year period before the survey. Women in cities/towns and urban villages received the vaccine in case of more than 70 percent of births and rural areas in case of 66.4 percent of births 2 years prior to the survey. Women aged 25 years and above received the vaccine in case of more than 70 percent of births while those aged less than 25 received the vaccine in case of about 63 percent of birth in the two years period to the survey.

Table 7. 2: Percentage of mothers with a birth in the last 24 months protected against neonatal tetanus, Botswana, 2007

	Protected against tetanus	Number of mothers
Place of residence		
City/Town	73.5	315
Urban Village	72.0	469
Rural	66.4	613
Age		
15-19	62.2	91
20-24	63.4	436
25-29	73.0	383
30-34	73.5	239
35-39	75.0	183
40-49	77.9	65
Educational level of members		
No education	64.4	82
Pre-school	45.5	3
Primary	75.6	270
Secondary	68.7	1,037
Non-formal/Non-standard	100.0	5
Total	69.9	1,397

7.2 Delivery Care

Hygienic conditions and proper medical assistance at the time of delivery can reduce the risk of complications and infections for both the mother and the child. For all births in the two year period before the survey, the BFHS IV collected information on where the delivery occurred and on whether the mother was assisted by trained medical personnel.

7.2.1 Place of Delivery

Over 90 percent of births in the two year period before the survey occurred in a health facility (Table 7.3). A high proportion of 99.1 percent of births to women residing in towns/cities reported delivering in health facilities followed by those in urban villages (97.5 percent) and the lowest at 88.2 percent was recorded in rural areas.

Table 7. 3: Percentage distribution of women aged 15-49 with a birth in two years preceding the survey by type of delivery, personnel assisting at Botswana, 2007

Background Characteristics	Person assisting at delivery					Delivered in health facility	Number of women
	Any skilled personnel	Traditional birth attendant	Relative /friend	No attendant	Don't Know/missing		
Place of residence							
City/Town	99.3	.3	.3	.1	.0	99.1	315
Urban Village	97.2	.2	1.2	.9	.4	97.5	469
Rural	90.2	2.8	5.1	1.8	.1	88.2	613
Age							
15-19	91.3	3.4	4.7	.7	.0	89.6	91
20-24	94.4	.8	3.5	1.1	.2	94.0	436
25-29	97.7	.5	1.7	.1	.0	96.7	383
30-34	94.5	1.5	2.4	1.0	.7	93.8	239
35-39	91.1	3.8	2.4	2.7	.0	89.9	183
40-49	92.7	.0	3.3	4.0	.0	91.4	65
Educational level of members							
No education	80.2	7.9	8.5	3.4	.0	76.5	82
Pre-school	100.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	100.0	3
Primary	87.7	2.7	6.5	2.5	.6	87.5	270
Secondary	97.8	.5	1.3	.3	.1	97.1	1,037
Non-formal/Non-standard	32.3	.0	.0	67.7	.0	32.3	5
Total	94.6	1.4	2.7	1.1	.2	93.8	1,397

NB: Any skilled personnel includes medical doctors, Nurse/midwife and Auxiliary midwives

7.2.2 Assistance at Delivery

Table 7.3 presents information of persons assisting with the delivery for all births during the two years before the survey. If the mother was assisted by more than one individual, only the most qualified is shown in the table. About 95 percent of the deliveries were attended by trained personnel of whom 21 percent were attended by a doctor, 73.2 by a trained nurse or midwife and 0.4 by an auxiliary nurse. About 5 percent of deliveries in the two years preceding the survey were attended by non skilled personnel of whom 1.1 percent was not attended to at all.

7.3 Child Care

Many of the deaths in early childhood can be prevented by immunizing children against preventable diseases and by ensuring that children receive prompt and appropriate treatment when they become ill. This section presents information from the Ministry of Health (MOH) Epidemiology Unit on the level of immunisation among children under 5 years. The chapter also considers information from the BFHS on the prevalence and treatment of a number of common childhood illnesses including diarrhoea, acute respiratory infection, ear pain and fever.

7.3.1 Immunisation of Children

World Health Organisation guidelines for childhood immunisation call for all children to receive a BCG vaccination against tuberculosis; three doses of the DPT vaccine to prevent diphtheria; pertussis; and tetanus; three doses of polio vaccine; and a measles vaccination during the first year of life. In addition to these standard immunisations, Botswana's childhood program recommends that children receive three doses of the hepatitis vaccine.

On immunisation MOH data was used instead of the BFHS results because the tool used for data collection omitted one question which is very crucial in the analysis of immunisation of children. During the survey mothers were asked to produce the child health card and information on immunisation was extracted from the card. In the case where the card could not be availed, the mother was supposed to have been asked a number of questions to establish if the child received specific vaccines and, if so, how many doses. During analysis it was observed that about 20 percent of the children were not covered as the health cards were not produced on request. This would therefore affect the results. Since the Expanded Programme on Immunisation (EPI) unit of MOH carried out an immunisation survey in 2007 it was considered ideal to use the information from MOH instead.

Table 7. 4: Immunization Coverage (Card and History) among children 12-23 months

District	BCG	OPV-1	DPT-1	OPV-2	DPT-2	OPV-3	DPT-3	Measles	HepB1	HepB3	Immunized
Bobirwa	99.5	98.5	98.5	98.5	98.5	98.0	98.0	93.0	99.0	95.0	91.0
Boteti	98.8	96.5	97.7	96.0	97.1	93.6	94.2	92.5	98.3	89.6	86.1
Chobe	96.8	99.5	98.9	99.5	98.4	98.6	97.9	92.0	100.0	88.8	80.7
Francistown	96.6	89.2	88.7	88.2	88.2	86.7	86.7	85.7	88.2	82.3	79.3
Gaborone	98.6	95.7	95.7	95.7	95.2	95.2	93.3	93.8	94.2	93.3	90.9
Gantsi	98.9	98.4	98.9	98.4	98.4	98.4	98.4	96.3	98.4	94.7	94.4
Good hope	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	97.6	100.0	96.6	96.6
Hukuntsi	99.5	99.0	99.0	99.5	99.5	97.6	97.6	98.0	99.0	95.6	94.1
Jwaneng	99.5	97.4	97.4	97.4	97.4	97.4	97.4	96.3	97.4	95.8	95.7
Kanye/Moshupa	99.5	99.5	99.5	99.0	99.5	97.4	98.5	95.9	99.0	94.9	93.1
Kgalagadi	99.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	98.6	99.0	98.1	99.0	98.1	92.2
Kgatlang	99.5	99.5	99.5	99.5	99.0	98.1	98.1	95.1	100.0	98.1	93.7
Kweneng East	99.5	97.1	97.6	97.6	97.6	98.1	97.1	93.2	97.1	94.2	91.3
Kweneng West	99.5	100.0	99.5	99.0	99.0	99.0	98.5	94.2	100.0	94.2	91.1
Lobatse	98.5	98.0	98.0	97.0	98.0	92.0	95.0	94.9	95.9	85.8	80.4
Mabutsane	100.0	100.0	99.5	100.0	99.5	95.6	95.6	87.7	99.5	94.1	85.7
Mahalapye	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	99.0	98.0	98.1	99.5	98.6	96.2
Ngami	98.1	97.1	96.6	96.1	95.7	96.1	93.2	90.3	96.6	91.8	84.8
North East	98.5	98.5	99.5	98.5	100.0	96.0	99.0	86.9	99.0	92.5	85.1
Okavango	96.2	97.1	96.6	95.2	94.7	90.4	90.9	87.5	95.2	86.5	78.8
Selibi Phikwe	100.0	99.5	100.0	99.0	99.5	99.5	99.5	98.1	99.5	94.7	95.1
Serowe/Palapye	98.6	99.0	98.6	98.1	98.6	97.1	97.1	91.4	95.7	96.2	91.3
South East	100.0	100.0	100.0	99.5	100.0	99.0	99.0	97.6	99.5	95.7	93.7
Tutume	99.0	97.5	97.5	97.5	97.5	97.0	97.0	94.1	98.0	91.1	87.6
Botswana	98.9	97.4	97.5	97.2	97.2	96.3	95.9	93.7	96.9	93.1	90.0

Source: Ministry of Health (Botswana Immunization Coverage Survey 2007)

The information from Table 7.4 was extracted from the health card and some was based on the mother's report. The results in the table indicate that the childhood immunisation programme in Botswana has wide coverage. Among children aged 12-23 months, coverage for all vaccines is more than 90 percent. Coverage levels for BCG are virtually universal, and 93.7 percent of children 12-23 months have received a measles vaccination. The proportion receiving three doses of the DPT and polio vaccines are 95.9 and 96.3 percent respectively. Overall, 90 percent of the children are considered fully immunised against all of these preventable diseases, i.e, they have received a BCG and measles vaccination and three doses of the DPT and Polio vaccines.

7.3.2 Diarrhoea

Dehydration caused by severe diarrhoea is a major cause of death among young children. A simple and effective response to dehydration is a prompt increase in the child's fluid intake through some form of oral rehydration therapy (ORT). ORT may include the use of a solution prepared from commercially produced packets of oral rehydration salts (ORS) or a homemade mixture usually prepared from sugar, salt and water. Increasing the amount of any other liquids given to a child during diarrheal episode is another means of preventing dehydration.

Mothers or caretakers were asked whether any of their children under 5 years of age had diarrhoea during the two weeks preceding the survey. If the child had had diarrhoea, the mother

was asked about actions taken to treat the diarrhoea and about feeding practices during the diarrheal episode.

Table 7.5 shows percentages of children under five years of age who had any diarrhoea at some time during the two week period before the survey. In considering the information in the table, it is important to note that the prevalence figures may involve some reporting error since they are based on the mother's subjective assessment of the child's illness.

Among children under age five, 18 percent were reported to have been ill with diarrhoea during the two week period before the survey. Higher prevalence was observed among children under the age of 3 when compared with older children. Diarrheal prevalence decreased with mother's education and higher prevalence was observed in rural areas compared to cities.

Information was obtained on the actions that were taken when a child was ill with diarrhoea during the two week period before the survey. Sixty eight percent of all children who were reported to have had diarrhoea in the past two weeks prior to the survey were treated with Oral Rehydration Therapy (ORT). Of these, 42.9 percent were given ORS packet solution while 40.0 percent were given home solution of salt sugar and water.

Table 7. 5: Percentage of children aged 0-59 months with diarrhoea in the last two weeks and treatment with oral rehydration solution (ORS) or other oral rehydration treatment (ORT), Botswana, 2007

Background Characteristics	Had diarrhoea in last two weeks	Number of living children aged 0-59 months	ORS packet solution	Home solution of salt, sugar, and water	No treatment	ORT use rate	Number of children aged 0-59 months with diarrhoea
Sex							
Male	16.9	1360	44.1	39.9	31.5	68.5	229
Female	19.0	1342	41.9	40.0	32.4	67.6	255
Place of residence							
City/Town	15.8	450	38.2	41.8	30.4	69.6	71
Urban Village	17.3	885	41.4	44.8	29.2	70.8	153
Rural	19.0	1367	45.2	36.6	34.1	65.9	260
Age							
< 6 months	16.8	243	32.6	35.2	39.8	60.2	41
6-11 months	28.1	307	47.5	43.6	26.2	73.8	86
12-23 months	28.9	586	42.6	47.3	29.0	71.0	169
24-35 months	17.8	582	45.2	34.3	35.2	64.8	103
36-47 months	9.1	531	48.4	31.1	31.6	68.4	49
48-59 months	8.1	454	31.6	30.3	42.9	57.1	37
Educational Level of Caretaker/Mother							
No education/Pre-school	20.2	339	45.3	42.4	27.6	72.4	69
Primary	18.3	705	37.6	38.8	36.0	64.0	129
Secondary	17.3	1,622	44.3	39.8	31.5	68.5	281
Non-formal/Non-standard	15.8	35	74.0	49.0	13.0	87.0	6
DK/missing	16.0	5	.0	.0	100.0	.0	1
Total	17.9	2,706	42.9	40.0	32.0	68.0	485

7.3.3 Disposal of Children's Stools

If faeces are left uncontained, disease may spread by direct contact or through animal contact. Children's faeces are often a cause of faecal contamination in the household environment since they are frequently not disposed of properly. Thus the disposal of children's faeces is important in preventing the spread of diseases.

To obtain information on this issue, mothers who had at least one child aged less than three years and had suffered from diarrhoea sometime during the two week period before the survey were asked about what was done to dispose of the faeces the last time their child had passed stools.

Table 7.6 shows that 66.8 percent of children with diarrhoea had their stools disposed of safely. The findings indicate that in urban villages children faeces are disposed off safely than in cities/towns. It is important to note that a high percentage (17.5 percent) in cities/towns compared to urban and rural areas 4.2 and 1.8 respectively reported to have thrown the faeces into garbage. This might be due to the increased use of disposable nappies that seem to be more convenient for the working population especially in urban areas, but unaffordable for the rural

area dwellers. Safe ways of faecal disposal increases with level of education of the mother or care taker (Table 7.6).

Table 7. 6: Percentage distribution of children aged 0-2 years according to place of disposal of child's faeces, and the percentage of children aged 0-2 years whose stools are disposed of safely, Botswana, 2007

	The last time...passed stools, what was done to dispose of the child faeces							Total	Proportion of children with diarrhea whose stools are disposed off safely	Number of children aged 0-2 years
	Child used toilet/latrine	Put/rinsed into toilet/latrine	Put/rinsed into drain or ditch	Thrown into garbage (solid waste)	buried	Left in the open	Dont know			
Place of residence										
City/Town	13.5	54.0	7.6	17.5	3.8	.0	3.6	100.0	67.5	26
Urban Village	20.0	68.6	1.4	4.2	5.9	.0	.0	100.0	88.6	81
Rural	7.8	42.1	3.2	1.8	40.6	3.4	1.1	100.0	49.4	103
Educational Level of Caretaker/Mother										
No educ/Pre-school	2.1	37.8	4.5	.0	43.5	8.1	3.9	100.0	40.0	28
Primary	17.7	38.4	.0	1.8	39.4	2.7	.0	100.0	54.8	46
Secondary	13.4	62.4	3.8	6.7	12.9	.0	.7	100.0	75.8	133
Non-formal/Non-STD	44.8	55.2	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	100.0	100.0	3
Total	13.2	53.9	3.1	4.7	22.5	1.7	1.0	100.0	66.8	210

7.3.4 Severe Cough or Difficulty in Breathing Treatment

Pneumonia is the leading cause of death in children and the use of antibiotics in under-5s with suspected pneumonia is a key intervention. Children with suspected pneumonia are those who had an illness with a cough accompanied by rapid or difficult breathing and whose symptoms were due to a problem in the chest and a blocked nose. This question was limited to children who had suspected pneumonia within the previous two weeks and whether or not they had received an antibiotic within the previous two weeks.

Table 7. 7: Percentage of children aged 0-59 months with suspected pneumonia who received antibiotic treatment, Botswana, 2007

	Percentage of children aged 0-59 months with suspected pneumonia who received antibiotics in the last four weeks	Percentage of children aged 0-59 months with suspected pneumonia who received an undefined injection (possibly antibiotics) and who did not receive antibiotics in the last four weeks	Number of children aged 0-59 months with suspected pneumonia in the four weeks prior to the survey
Sex			
Male	33.5	3.8	92
Female	42.9	2.2	62
Place of residence			
City/Town	44.2	.7	25
Urban Village	24.7	2.1	45
Rural	42.0	4.4	84
Age			
0-11 months	59.5	3.3	28
12-23 months	42.3	.0	34
24-35 months	32.3	5.1	33
36-47 months	18.2	5.8	36
48-59 months	39.0	.7	24
Educational Level of Caretaker/Mother			
No education/Pre-school	19.9	3.8	28
Primary	37.0	.4	48
Secondary	43.0	4.6	78
Non-formal/Non-standard	100.0	.0	1
Total	37.2	3.1	154

Table 7.7 presents the use of antibiotics for the treatment of suspected pneumonia in under-fives by sex, age, residence, and educational level of mother or caretaker. The results indicate that 37.2 percent of under-5 children with suspected pneumonia had received an antibiotic during the two weeks prior to the survey. The percentage was considerably higher in Cities/towns and rural areas at 44.2 and 42 percent respectively, while the percentage declines to only 24.7 percent in the urban villages. The table also shows that antibiotic treatment of suspected pneumonia is very low, among children whose mothers/caretakers have no education or preschool education. The use of antibiotics seems to decline with the age of the child.

7.3.5 Fever Prevalence and treatment

During the BFHS IV, women were asked whether each child under five years had fever in the four weeks prior to the interview. The results in Table 7.8 show that 19.0 percent of children under five years of age were reported to have had fever prior to the interview. The highest proportion of children with fever was among children aged 6-11 months (25.7 percent) followed by those aged 12- 23 months with 24 percent. Overall more than 75 percent of children with fever are taken to a health facility, only a few are taken to traditional doctors (0.4 percent) and almost a quarter of children are not taken anywhere for treatment.

Table 7. 8: Percentage Distribution of under 5 children with fever and taken for treatment by background characteristics, Botswana 2007

Background Characteristics	Children who had fever	Health facility	Traditional clinic	Child not taken	Other	Total
Age						
< 6 months	16.1	74.4	0.0	25.6	0.0	39
6-11 months	25.7	78.2	0.0	21.8	0.0	78
12-23 months	24.0	78.2	0.0	21.1	0.7	142
24-35 months	18.4	72.3	0.0	26.8	0.9	112
36-47 months	16.3	74.7	0.0	25.3	0.0	87
48-59 months	13.8	70.8	3.1	26.2	0.0	65
Place of Residence						
City/Town	19.5	77.7	0.0	22.3	0.0	94.0
Urban Village	17.3	72.9	0.0	27.1	0.0	155.0
Rural	19.9	75.5	0.7	23.0	0.7	274.0
Sex						
Male	18.4	76.3	0.8	22.5	0.4	253
Female	19.6	74.1	0.0	25.6	0.4	270
Level of education of mother / Caretaker						
No education/Pre-school	23.3	67.9	2.4	28.6	1.2	84
Primary	15.6	81.2	0.0	18.8	0.0	117
Secondary	19.6	74.6	0.0	25.1	0.3	315
Non-formal/Non-standard	20.6	85.7	0.0	14.3	0.0	7
Total	19.0	75.1	0.4	24.1	0.4	523

7.3.6 Ear Pain or Discharge and Treatment

Among children aged under 5 years, 5.1 percent were reported to have had ear pain or discharge four weeks prior to the interview (Table 7.9). The highest proportion of these children were reported among those aged 6-11 months (7.3 percent) followed closely by those aged 12-23 months (7.2 percent). About 74 percent of children with ear pain were taken to a health facility for treatment. About 24 percent were not taken anywhere for treatment while 1.4 percent were taken to traditional doctors.

Table 7. 9: Percentage Distribution of under 5 children who had ear pain or discharge and were taken for treatment by background characteristics, Botswana 2007

Background Characteristics	Children who had ear pain	Health facility	Traditional Doctor	Child not taken	Don't know	Total
Age						
< 6 months	3.3	75.0	0.0	25.0	0.0	8
6-11 months	7.3	68.2	4.5	27.3	0.0	22
12-23 months	7.2	66.7	0.0	33.3	0.0	42
24-35 months	5.0	80.0	3.3	16.7	0.0	30
36-47 months	4.1	77.3	0.0	22.7	0.0	22
48-59 months	3.2	86.7	0.0	6.7	6.7	15
Sex						
Male	5.2	77.8	1.4	20.8	0.0	72
Female	5.0	70.1	1.5	26.9	1.5	67
Place of residence						
City/Town	6.2	71.0	3.2	25.8	0.0	31
Urban Village	4.0	74.3	0.0	25.7	0.0	35
Rural	5.4	75.3	1.4	21.9	1.4	73
Educational Level of Caretaker/Mother						
No education/Pre-school	5.1	72.2	0.0	27.8	0.0	18
Primary	4.1	74.2	0.0	25.8	0.0	31
Secondary	5.4	74.4	2.3	22.1	1.2	86
Non-formal/Non-standard	11.8	75.0	0.0	25.0	0.0	4
Total	5.1	74.1	1.4	23.7	0.7	139

CHAPTER 8: NUTRITIONAL STATUS

This chapter looks at several important aspects of the nutritional status of Botswana population. Anthropometric data (height and weight) was collected for all the sampled population. These data are used to assess the current nutritional status of the population.

Children's nutritional status is a reflection of their overall health. When children have access to an adequate food supply, are not exposed to repeated illness, and are well cared for, they reach their growth potential and are considered well nourished.

In a well-nourished population, there is a standard distribution of height and weight for children under age five. Undernourishment in a population can be assessed by comparing children to a reference distribution. The reference population used here is the WHO/CDC/NCHS reference, which is recommended for use by UNICEF and the World Health Organization. Each of the three nutritional status indicators can be expressed in standard deviation units (z-scores) from the median of this reference population.

Weight for age is a measure of both acute and chronic malnutrition. Children whose weight for age is more than two standard deviations below the median of the reference population are considered *moderately or severely underweight* while those whose weight for age is more than three standard deviations below the median are classified as *severely underweight*.

Height for age is a measure of linear growth. Children whose height for age is more than two standard deviations below the median of the reference population are considered short for their age and are classified as *moderately or severely stunted*. Those whose height for age is more than three standard deviations below the median are classified as *severely stunted*. Stunting is a reflection of chronic malnutrition as a result of failure to receive adequate nutrition over a long period and recurrent or chronic illness.

Finally, children whose weight for height is more than two standard deviations below the median of the reference population are classified as *moderately or severely wasted*, while those who fall more than three standard deviations below the median are *severely wasted*. Wasting is usually the result of a recent nutritional deficiency. The indicator may exhibit significant seasonal shifts associated with changes in the availability of food or disease prevalence.

8.1 Anthropometric Measurements

Table 8.1 shows percentages of children classified into each of these categories, based on the anthropometric measurements that were taken during fieldwork. Additionally, the table includes the percentage of children who are overweight, which takes into account those children whose weight for height is above 2 standard deviations from the median of the reference population.

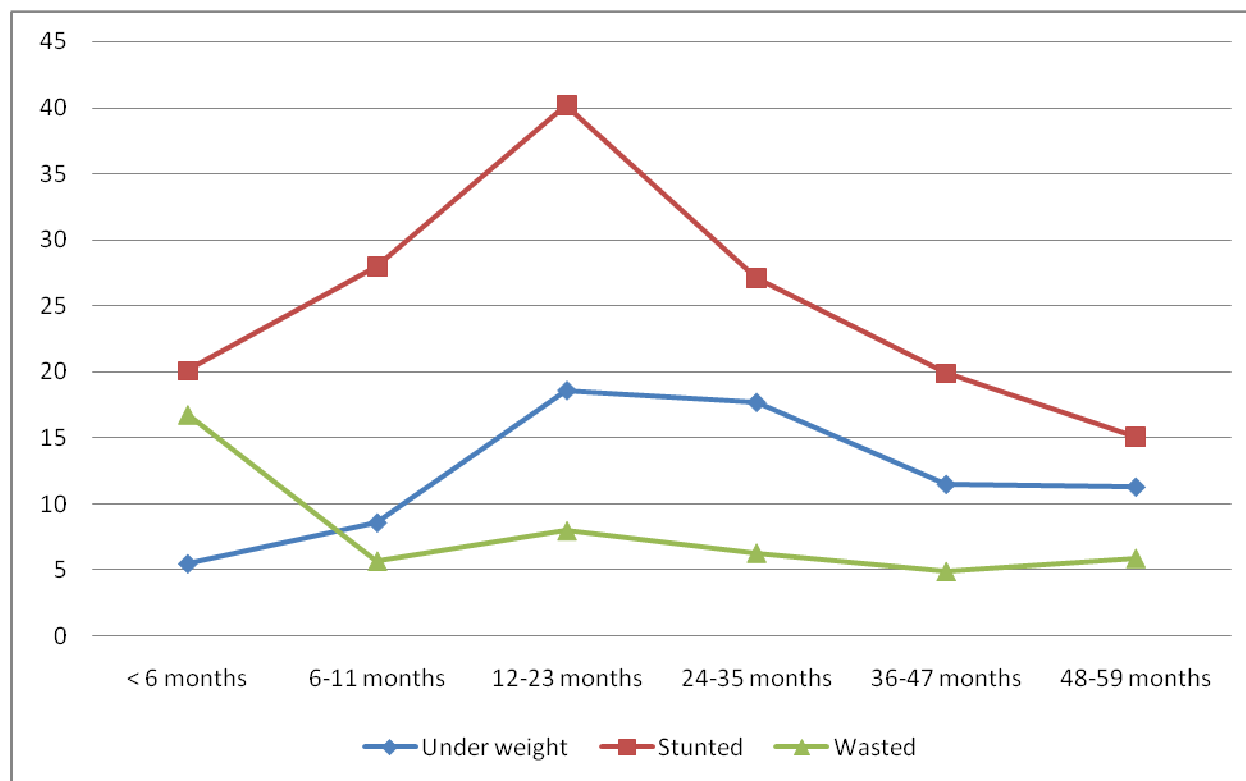
Table 8. 1: Percentage of under-five children who are severely or moderately undernourished, Botswana, 2007

	Weight for age % below -2 SD		Height for age % below -2 SD		Weight for Height % below -2 SD		% above +2 SD	Number of children
Place of residence								
City/Town	9.3	1.4	19.6	5.9	5.3	1.9	11.1	413
Urban Village	11.8	2.3	24.1	10.0	6.5	2.4	10.7	836
Rural	16.0	4.0	29.1	13.4	8.2	3.1	9.1	1,286
sex								
Male	13.9	3.1	28.5	11.7	7.7	2.4	9.3	1,279
Female	13.1	2.9	23.2	10.4	6.6	2.9	10.6	1,258
Age								
< 6 months	5.5	2.5	20.1	11.6	16.8	11.8	26.3	226
6-11 months	8.6	2.7	28.0	13.6	5.7	2.3	26.0	278
12-23 months	18.6	5.2	40.2	17.0	8.0	2.2	12.6	544
24-35 months	17.7	2.8	27.1	11.8	6.3	2.2	4.5	553
36-47 months	11.5	2.2	19.9	6.9	4.9	.7	2.7	498
48-59 months	11.3	1.8	15.1	5.3	5.9	1.6	3.1	437
Educational Level of Caretaker/Mother								
No education/Pre-school	21.6	5.4	33.4	16.9	7.6	1.1	5.8	315
Primary	15.4	3.8	29.3	11.9	6.5	2.3	10.7	668
Secondary	10.8	1.9	22.7	9.5	7.3	3.0	10.6	1,515
Non-formal/Non-standard	24.9	15.0	34.0	9.8	13.3	7.7	5.3	34
DK/missing	.0	.0	19.7	.0	.0	.0	.0	4
Total	13.5	3.0	25.9	11.0	7.2	2.7	10.0	2,537

In Table 8.1, children who were not weighed and not measured and those whose measurements were outside a plausible range were excluded. In addition, a small number of children whose birth dates are not known are excluded; this accounted for 7.5 percent of the children. About 14 percent of children under age five in Botswana are moderately underweight (13.5 percent) and 3 percent were classified as severely underweight. Almost 26 percent of children are stunted or too short for their age and 7.2 percent are wasted or too thin for their height.

Children in the rural areas are more likely to be underweight and stunted than other children. Those children whose mothers have secondary or higher education are the least likely to be underweight and stunted compared to children of mothers with no education. Boys appear to be slightly more likely to be underweight, stunted, and wasted than girls. The age pattern shows that a higher percentage of children aged 12-23 months are undernourished according to all three indices in comparison to children who are younger and older (Figure 4).

Figure 4: Percentage of children aged 0-59 months who are under nourished, Botswana 2007



8.2 Low Birth Weight

Infants who weigh less than 2500 grams (2.5kg) at birth are categorised as low birth weight babies. Birth weights were obtained from the child health card and where there was no card the mother's recall of the child's weight was used.

Table 8.2 shows that 93.7 percent of live births in the 2 years preceding the survey were weighed and birth weight was available for 47.6 percent of the children. From those with weight available, 13.1 percent of them weighed below 2,500 grams. There is no significant variation by place of residence

Table 8. 2: Percentage of live births in the 2 years preceding the survey that weighed below 2500 grams at birth, Botswana, 2007

Background Characteristics	Percent of live births below 2500 grams	Percent of live births with birth weight data available	Percent of live births with birth weight taken	Number of live births
Place of residence				
City/Town	12.0	49.4	97.2	315
Urban Village	13.3	48.9	96.3	469
Rural	13.4	45.5	89.8	613
Educational level of members				
No education	14.8	43.7	80.4	82
Pre-school	29.2	100.0	100.0	3
Primary	13.8	43.0	87.5	270
Secondary	12.6	48.8	96.4	1,037
Non-formal/Non-standard	20.0	67.7	84.2	5
Total	13.1	47.6	93.7	1,397

8.3 Breastfeeding

The pattern of infant feeding has an important influence on the health of children. Feeding practices are the principal determinant of young child's nutritional status, and poor nutritional status has been shown to increase the risk of illness and death among children. Breast feeding practices have an effect on the mother's fertility. Frequent breastfeeding for long duration is associated with longer periods of postpartum amenorrhea and thus longer birth intervals and lower fertility. The results in Table 8.3 indicate that 76.3 percent of all children under 5 years were ever been breastfed.

Table 8. 3: Percentage of children under 5 years who were ever breastfed, Botswana 2007

Background Characteristics	Percentage Ever Breastfed	Total under 5
Place of residence		
City/Town	79.3	482
Urban Village	73.8	884
Rural	77.0	1,350
Educational Level of Caretaker/Mother		
No education/Pre-school	73.7	353
Primary	70.8	736
Secondary	79.3	1,591
Non-formal/Non-standard	82.4	34
DK/missing	100.0	4
Sex		
Male	78.5	1,368
Female	74.1	1,350
Total	76.3	2,718

8.3.1 Initiation of Breastfeeding

Early initiation of breastfeeding is important for both the mother and the child. Early suckling stimulates the release of hormones that help in the production of milk. Colostrum, the first liquid to come from the breast after delivery provides natural immunity to the infant.

Among Botswana children aged below two years who were ever breastfed, Table 8.4 shows that 40 percent of women aged 12-49 years with a birth in the 2 years preceding the survey began breastfeeding within an hour of birth, 65.7 percent started breastfeeding within the first day after delivery.

Table 8. 4: Percentage of women aged 12-49 years with a birth in the 2 years preceding the survey who breastfed their baby within one hour of birth and within one day of birth, Botswana, 2007

	Percentage who started breastfeeding within one hour of birth	Percentage who started breastfeeding within one day of birth	Number of women with live birth in the two years preceding the survey
Place of residence			
City/Town	41.2	66.8	315
Urban Village	42.3	68.4	469
Rural	37.5	62.8	613
Months since last birth			
< 6 months	41.5	65.1	232
6-11 months	38.4	59.4	289
12-23 months	41.2	67.8	575
Educational level of members			
No education	40.5	72.6	82
Pre-school	.0	100.0	3
Primary	37.9	57.5	270
Secondary	40.4	66.9	1,037
Non-formal/Non-standard	68.4	84.2	5
Total	40.0	65.6	1,397

8.3.2 Breastfeeding

Breastfeeding for the first few years of life protects children from infection, provides an ideal source of nutrients, and is economical and safe. However, many mothers stop breastfeeding too soon and switch to infant formula, which can contribute to growth faltering and micronutrient malnutrition and is unsafe if clean water is not readily available. The World Fit for Children goal states that children should be exclusively breastfed for 6 months and continue breastfeeding with safe, appropriate and adequate complementary feeding up to 2 years of age and beyond.

In Table 8.5, breastfeeding status is based on the reports of mothers/caretakers about children's consumption of food and fluids in the 24 hours prior to the interview. *Exclusively breastfed* refers to infants who received only breast milk and vitamins, mineral supplements, or medicine. The table shows exclusive breastfeeding of infants during the first six months of life (separately for 0-3 months and 0-5 months), as well as complementary feeding of children 6-9 months and continued breastfeeding of children at 12-15 and 20-23 months of age.

Table 8. 5: Percentage of living children according to breastfeeding status at each age group, Botswana, 2007

	0-3 months	0-5 months	6-9 months	12-15 months	20-23 months
	Percent exclusively breastfed	Percent exclusively breastfed	Percent receiving breast milk and solid/mushy food	Percent breastfed	Percent breastfed
Sex					
Male	25.6	17.4	48.4	35.4	8.0
Female	21.0	23.7	42.3	37.3	4.1
Place of residence					
City/Town	22.1	12.0	42.3	39.2	4.8
Urban Village	29.1	22.8	43.8	39.0	5.0
Rural	18.4	21.1	47.5	33.5	6.7
Educational Level of Caretaker/Mother					
No education/Pre-school	37.5	24.3	30.5	19.9	10.0
Primary	19.1	18.3	39.2	36.2	3.2
Secondary	23.1	20.4	49.4	37.8	6.5
Non-formal/Non-standard	.	.	23.5	100.0	.0
Total	23.3	20.3	45.5	36.3	5.9

Approximately 20 percent of children aged less than six months were exclusively breastfed. At age 6-9 months, 45.5 percent of children were receiving breast milk and solid or semi-solid foods. By age 12-15 months, 36.3 percent of children were still being breastfed and by age 20-23 months, 5.9 percent were still breastfed. Boys were more likely to be exclusively breastfed than girls, while girls had higher levels than boys for timely complementary feeding. A higher percentage of children born to women with no education (37.5 percent) were exclusively breastfed at age 0-3 months compared to those with primary (19.1 percent) and secondary (23.1 percent). About 23 percent of children in urban villages and 21 percent in rural areas were exclusively breastfed up to 5 months compared to 12 percent in cities/towns (Figure 5).

Figure 5: Percentage of living children according to breastfeeding status at each age group, Botswana, 2007

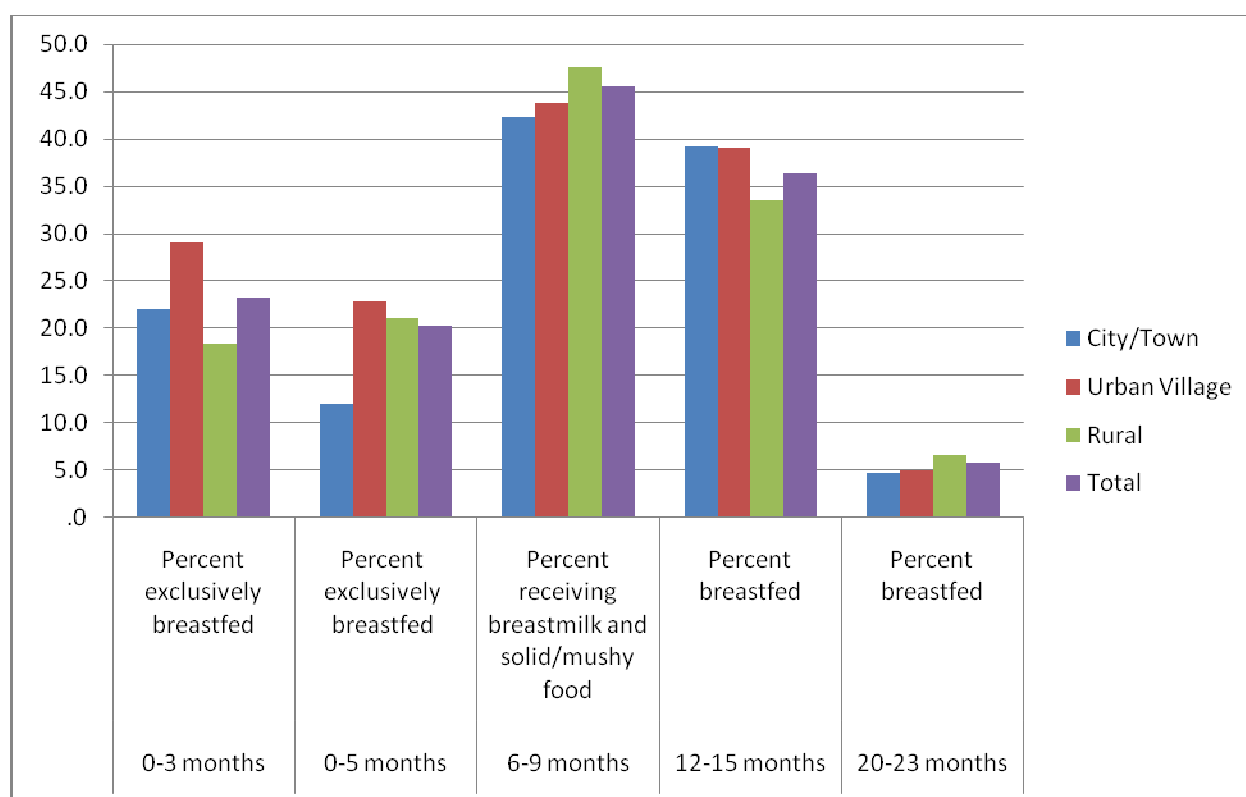


Table A 20 in the appendix shows that about 76 percent of children under 5 years had ever been breastfed while only 52.6 percent of under 5 children in the Chobe district were ever breastfed. Only three districts recorded below 70 percent of children who were ever breastfed and they are Central Tutume (69.8 percent), Central Mahalapye (69.5 percent) and Chobe (52.6 percent).

8.4 Micronutrients

Vitamin A and iodine are the two important micronutrients that prevent mental retardation and reduce child mortality when taken at adequate levels. The survey assesses whether or not children 6-59 months of age received the yearly doses of vitamin A supplements and if households had adequately iodized salt.

8.4.1 Vitamin A intake

Vitamin A is considered essential for normal sight, growth and development. Vitamin A protects the body against some infectious illnesses such as measles and diarrhoeal diseases. Severe Vitamin A deficiency is associated with total loss of vision or with other vision impairments including night blindness.

Table 8. 6: Percentage distribution of children aged 6-59 months by whether they received a high dose Vitamin A supplement in the last 6 months, Botswana, 2007

	Percent of children who received Vitamin A:					Total	Number of children aged 6-59 months
	Within last 6 months*	Prior to last 6 months	Not sure when	Not sure if received	Never received Vitamin A		
Sex							
Male	19.0	43.6	3.7	13.0	20.7	100.0	1,227
Female	18.7	44.7	3.5	14.2	19.0	100.0	1,232
Place of residence							
City/Town	19.3	45.9	3.5	10.1	21.2	100.0	410
Urban Village	18.4	46.3	4.3	11.4	19.6	100.0	793
Rural	18.9	42.2	3.2	16.1	19.5	100.0	1,256
Age							
6-11 months	35.1	13.8	1.4	8.6	41.0	100.0	307
12-23 months	28.4	30.3	3.8	13.9	23.7	100.0	586
24-35 months	17.5	51.2	2.4	12.7	16.2	100.0	582
36-47 months	11.3	60.8	5.0	12.9	9.9	100.0	531
48-59 months	6.0	54.0	4.6	18.5	16.9	100.0	454
Educational Level of Caretaker/Mother							
No education/Pre-school	18.6	34.0	4.1	23.8	19.5	100.0	327
Primary	15.3	48.5	2.8	13.6	19.8	100.0	666
Secondary	20.8	44.7	3.9	10.7	20.0	100.0	1,429
Non-formal/Non-standard	9.5	33.8	2.6	33.5	20.6	100.0	35
DK/missing	.0	57.8	.0	42.2	.0	100.0	4
Total	18.8	44.2	3.6	13.6	19.9	100.0	2,460

Information on Vitamin A supplementation is shown in Table 8.6. Less than 20 percent of the children aged 6 to 59 months received Vitamin A supplement within the last six months. There is no significant variation by place of residence. Percentage of Vitamin A supplementation decreases with age of child; it is high (35.1 percent) among the 6-11 months old and lowest (6.0 percent) among the 48-59 months old. Vitamin A was received by only 14.4 percent of under five children in Ngamiland prior to the last 6 months while the highest percentage of children (59.8 percent) in Kweneng west received Vitamin A during the same period. In Ngamiland North, Gaborone and Central Tutume, more than 30 percent of the under five children had never received vitamin A (Table A22).

8.4.2 Iodised Salt

Deficiency of iodine in the diet is the world's single greatest cause of preventable mental retardation and can lower the average intelligence quotient (IQ) of a population by as much as thirteen points. Salt iodization is an effective, low cost way of preventing iodine deficiency disorders. Adequately iodized salt contains 15ppm (parts per million) of iodine or more. Household salt was tested for iodine levels by means of a salt testing kit.

Table 8. 7: Percentage of households consuming adequately iodized salt, Botswana, 2007

Place of Residence	Percent of households in which salt was tested	Number of households interviewed	<u>Percent of households with salt test result</u>			Number of households in which salt was tested or with no salt
			< 15 PPM	15+ PPM	Total	
City/Town	88.5	1,888	24.5	75.5	100.0	1,747
Urban Village	79.3	2,173	32.7	67.3	100.0	1,825
Rural	68.7	2,970	44.9	55.1	100.0	2,285
Total	77.3	7,031	34.8	65.2	100.0	5,857

The results show that 77.3 percent of households had salt which was tested during the survey period and 75.5 percent of those in cities and town used adequately iodized salt which contains 15ppm (parts per million) of iodine or more. It is further indicated through Table 8.7 that 67.3 percent of the population in urban villages uses salt which is 15ppm of iodine or more. About 45 percent of the population in rural areas consumes salt that is 15ppm less in iodine.

8.5 Child Protection

8.5.1 Birth Registration

The International Convention on the Rights of the Child states that every child has the right to a name and a nationality and the right to protection from being deprived of his or her identity. Birth registration is a fundamental means of securing these rights for children.

Table 8. 8: Percentage distribution of children aged 0-59 months by whether birth is registered, Botswana 2007

	<u>Birth is registered</u>		Number of children aged 0-59 months without birth registration
	Percent	Number	
Under Five- Sex			
Male	71.8	1,377	300
Female	72.7	1,329	279
Place of residence			
City/Town	85.2	450	60
Urban Village	73.7	885	179
Rural	66.9	1,367	340
Age			
0-11 months	76.0	550	122
12-23 months	73.3	586	120
24-35 months	73.6	582	110
36-47 months	71.0	531	115
48-59 months	65.8	454	112
Educational Level of Caretaker/Mother			
No education/Pre-school	54.2	339	100
Primary	66.5	705	178
Secondary	78.6	1,622	292
Non-formal/Non-standard	71.1	35	7
DK/missing	35.1	5	2
Total	72.2	2,706	579

The births of 72 percent of children under five years in Botswana have been registered (Table 8.8). There are no significant variations in birth registration across sex. The percent registered is higher in urban areas with 85.2 children under 5 years registered compared to 66.9 percent in rural areas. There are significant variations in registration of children among different educational levels, those with secondary having 78.6 percent of births being registered compared to 54.2 percent registered births by mothers or caretakers with no education or pre-primary education. Among those whose births were not registered, cost (25.9 percent), travel distance (23.1 percent), and lack of knowledge (11.5 percent) appeared to be the main reasons (Table A24).

8.5.2 Basic Education

Universal access to basic education and the achievement of primary education by the world's children is one of the most important goals of the Millennium Development Goals and A World Fit for Children. Education is a vital prerequisite for combating poverty, empowering women, protecting children from hazardous and exploitative labour and sexual exploitation, promoting human rights and democracy, protecting the environment, and influencing population growth.

8.5.3 Early Childhood Education

Table 8.9 shows that about 18 percent of children aged 36-59 months were attending an organized early childhood programme, such as kindergarten or community childcare with organized learning activities. A higher percentage of children 36-59 in Cities/Towns (34.6 percent) were attending an organized early childhood education programme compared to their counterparts in rural areas (10.9 percent). In addition, 23 percent of children whose mothers or caretakers have secondary education attended early learning activities compared to 11.5 percent whose mothers or caretakers had primary education.

Table 8. 9: Percentage of children aged 36-59 months attending organized early childhood education, Botswana 2007

	Attending	Not attending	Dont know if attending	Total	Number of children aged 36-59 months
Place of residence					
City/Town	34.6	65.4	.0	100.0	139
Urban Village	21.8	78.2	.0	100.0	322
Rural	10.9	88.7	.3	100.0	523
Educational Level of Caretaker/Mother					
No education/Pre-school	13.2	86.8	.0	100.0	152
Primary	11.5	88.5	.0	100.0	295
Secondary	23.0	77.0	.0	100.0	517
Non-formal/Non-standard	15.0	75.0	10.0	100.0	17
DK/missing	.0	100.0	.0	100.0	3
Total	17.8	82.0	.2	100.0	985

8.5.4 Primary Education

Overall, 86.9 percent of children of primary school age in Botswana attended primary school or secondary school (Table 8.10). In urban areas, 89.2 percent of children attended school compared to 84.8 percent in rural areas. At the national level, there is a slight difference between male and female primary school attendance with females recording 88.2 percent Net Attendance Ratio (NAR) compared to 85.5 percent of males.

Table 8. 10: Percentage of children of primary school age attending primary school or secondary school (NAR), Botswana 2007

	Male		Female		Total	
	Net attendance ratio	Number of children	Net attendance ratio	Number of children	Net attendance ratio	Number of children
Place of residence						
City/Town	87.2	332	91.0	354	89.2	686
Urban Village	87.5	614	90.3	654	88.9	1,269
Rural	83.8	1048	85.9	1013	84.8	2,060
Age						
6	36.5	289	43.6	283	40.0	571
7	83.4	308	87.0	316	85.2	624
8	93.9	284	94.2	275	94.1	560
9	93.9	274	97.3	288	95.6	562
10	96.8	278	97.0	317	96.9	596
11	97.5	319	99.2	297	98.3	615
12	98.2	242	99.2	245	98.7	488
Total	85.5	1994	88.2	2021	86.9	4,015

CHAPTER 9: BODY MASS INDEX (BMI)

9.1 Introduction

Body Mass Index (BMI), is a statistical measure of the weight of person scaled according to height. Although BMI is not a measure of body fatness, persons classified as obese, tend to have excess body fat. A BMI in the overweight range is less healthy for most people, but in some cases it may be acceptable for people who are muscular and have less fat. Similarly, people with a BMI in the healthy weight range have excess body fat and little muscle. Therefore, the BMI ranges are not exact ranges of healthy and unhealthy weight. However, studies have shown that health risk increases as BMI increase. Measurements of height and weight help to assess the overall health and nutritional status of adults. Furthermore, BMI is used to define overweight, obesity and healthy weight.

In BFHS 2007, all members of household were weighted and their heights measured. BMI was then computed by dividing the weight in kilograms (kg) by height in meters squared (m^2).

In this Section, BMI has been estimated for adults aged 18 years and over. It should be noted that BMI is heavily influenced by their height; therefore, one should be cautious when interpreting the results since the BMI interpretations are based on WHO and CDC criteria. The criterion was determined in Europe and therefore may not be appropriate for African situation. BMI thresholds used are as follows,

	Women	Men
• Under weight	< 19.1	<20.7
• Normal weight	19.1 to 25.8	20.7-26.4
• Marginally Overweight	25.8 to 27.3	26.4-27.8
• Overweight	27.3 – 32.3	27.8 -31.1
• Very Overweight (Obese)	>32.3	>31.1
• Morbidly obese	>40	>40

It should be noted that the threshold differs by sex and age. And, according to the WHO and CDC model, men and women's overweight differ by approximately $2.0 \text{ kg}/m^2$.

9.2 Obesity Status

Figure 6 below shows that the 36.1 percent of the sampled population was in the normal weight range. This is followed by 34.8 percent in the underweight category. Furthermore, third highest proportion of the sampled population was in the overweight proportion while the very overweight and morbidly overweight constituted a marginal proportions of 3.9 percent and 3.4 percent respectively.

Figure 6: Percent of population according to their obesity status, Botswana 2007

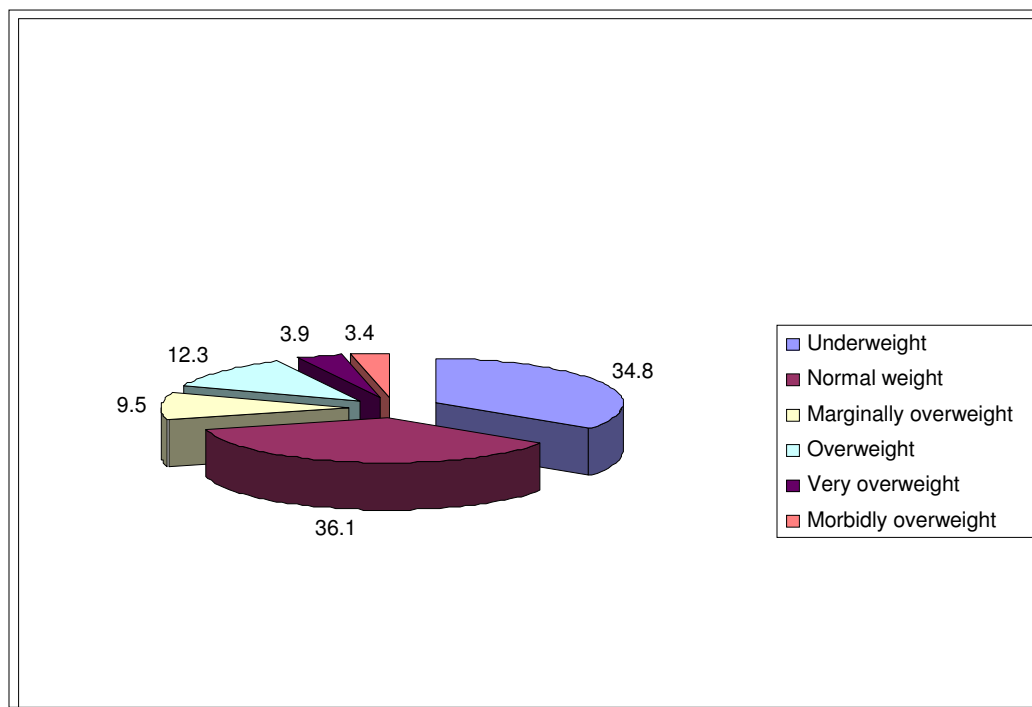


Figure 7: Percent of female population according to their obesity status by place of residence, Botswana 2007

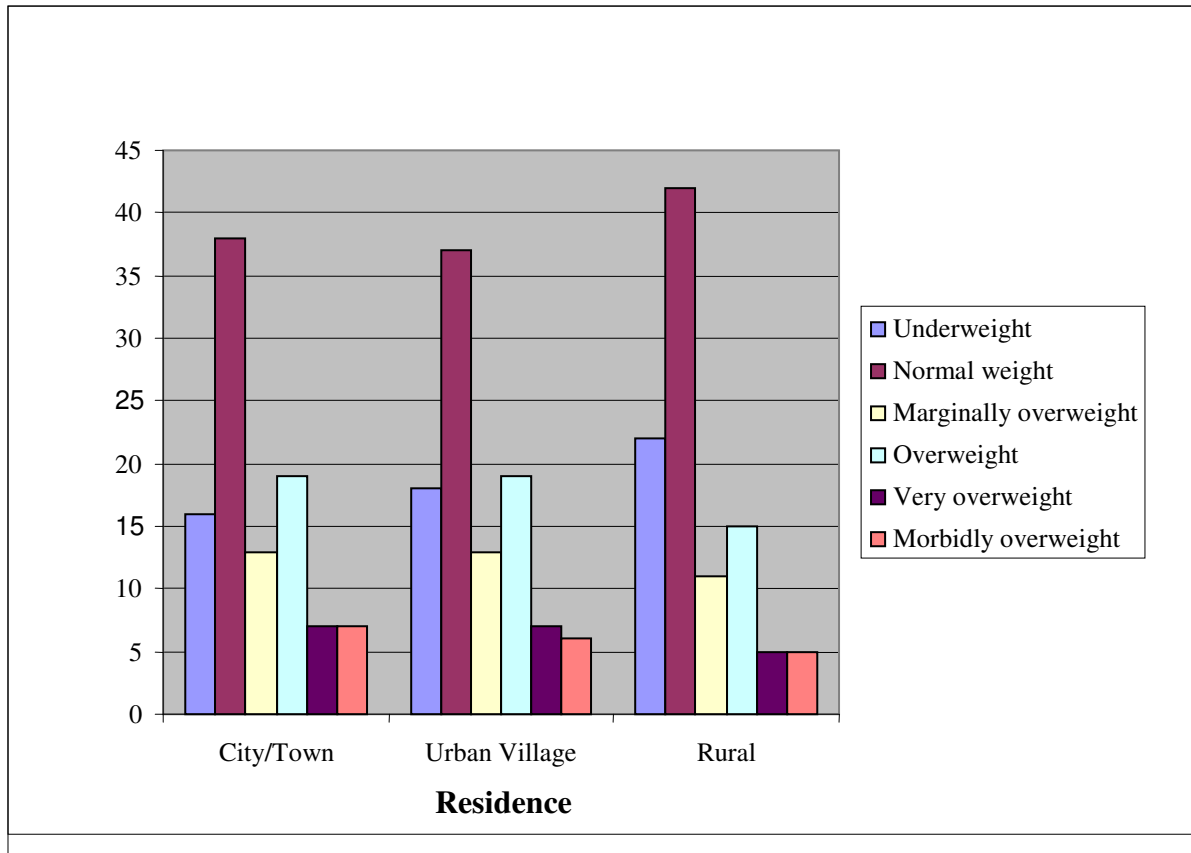
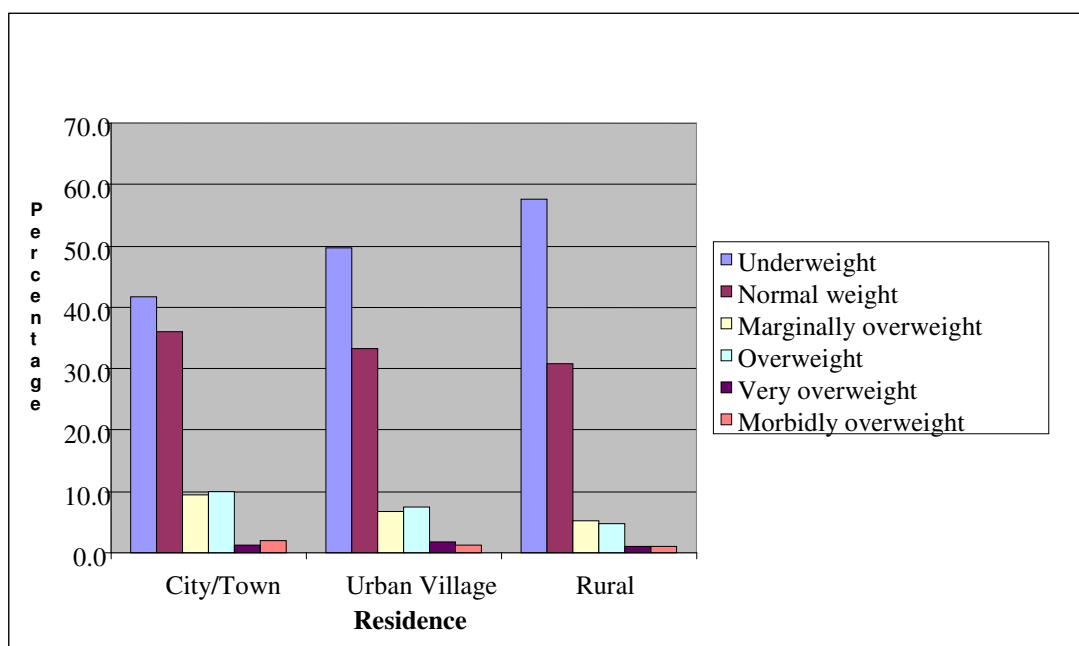


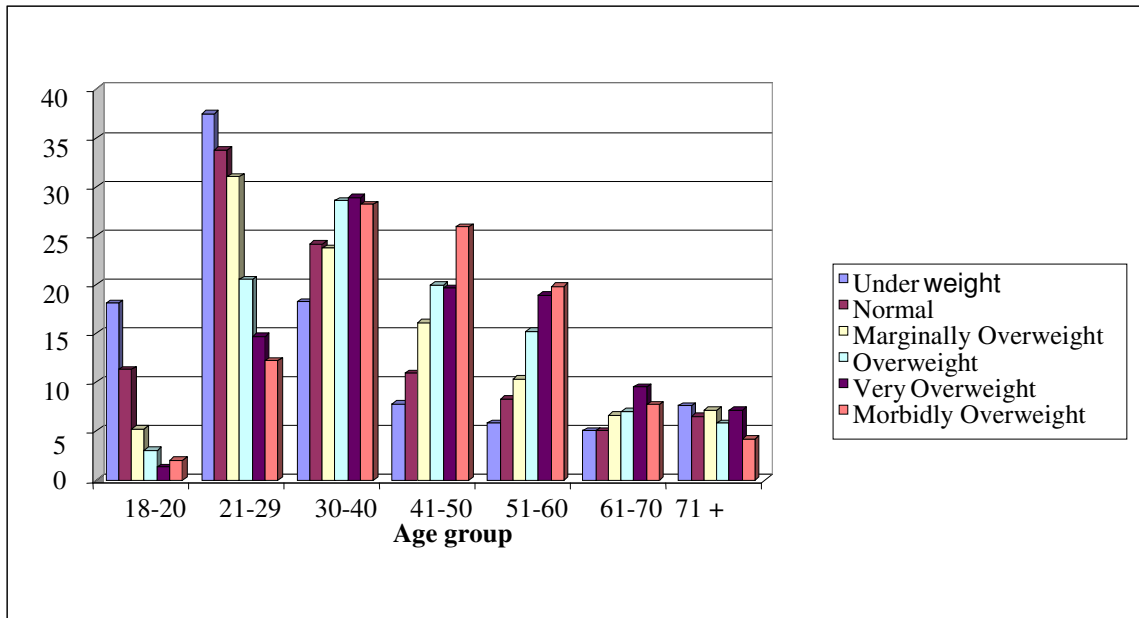
Figure 7 above shows that in cities/towns, urban villages and rural areas, most women are in the normal weight range category. It should however be noted that in all areas of residence, the normal weight range constituted less than 50 percent. Also, in the cities/towns and in urban areas, the category of overweight is the second highest while in rural areas the second highest category is underweight. Furthermore, in all three residential areas, the categories of very overweight and morbidly overweight constituted less than 10 percent.

Figure 8: Percent of male population according to their obesity status by place of residence, Botswana 2007



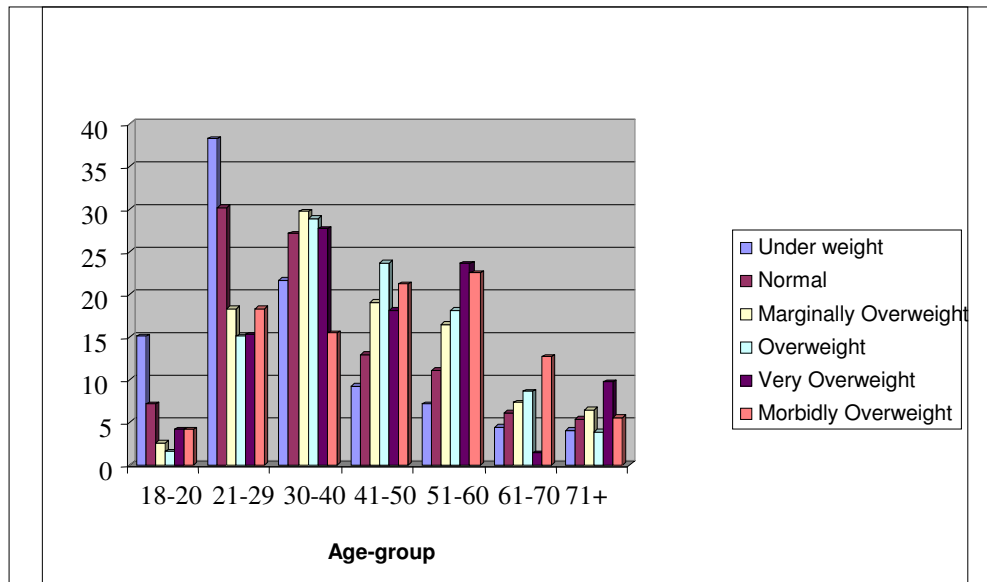
It is depicted through Figure 8 that males in all the three residential areas are the majority in the underweight category. In the rural residence, males in the underweight category are more than 50 percent. Moreover, the second highest (more than 30 percent) category in both residential areas is the normal range.

Figure 9: Percent of female population according to their obesity status by age-group, Botswana 2007



The distribution BMI by age group shows that the underweight category dominated in the ranges 18-20 and 21-29 followed by the normal range. As for the age group 30-40, all the categories are within the same range. Also, in this age group, overweight, very over- weight and morbidly overweight constituted the highest (over 25 percent) proportions. The morbidly overweight seem to dominate in all ages above 40 years (Figure 9)

Figure 10: Percent of male population according to their obesity status by age-group, Botswana 2007



As for the distribution of males BMI by age group, Figure 10 above shows a similar trend to the female BMI by age group in that age group 18-20 and 21-29 are dominated by the underweight category. However, unlike female distribution, in the age range 30-40, the highest (about 29 percent) category is the marginally overweight followed by overweight. Further, for all ages above 40 years, the highest proportions were either in the overweight or very overweight categories.

APPENDIX A: STATISTICAL TABLES

Household and Population Characteristics

Table A. 1 Percentage distribution of household population according to type of toilet used by the household and the percentage of household members using sanitary means of excreta disposal, Botswana, 2007

	Place of residence			Educational level					Total
	City/Town	Urban Village	Rural	No education or pre-school	Primary	Secondary +	Non-formal/Non-standard	DK/missing	
Improved sanitation facility									
Own Flush toilet	55.9	21.3	7.6	4.8	13.7	45.4	8.2	13.7	22.8
Own Ventilated Improved Pit Latrine (VIP)	19.0	28.2	15.5	18.1	25.2	17.0	33.3	84.3	20.5
Own Enviro-loo	.8	.3	.1	.3	.5	.2	.0	.0	.3
Communal Flush toilet	.4	.7	.7	.6	.4	.9	.0	.0	.6
Communal VIP	.2	.0	.3	.3	.1	.2	.0	.0	.2
Own Pit Latrine	21.2	39.0	26.4	29.4	33.8	26.0	30.6	.0	29.4
Communal Pit Latrine	1.6	2.1	2.4	2.1	2.1	1.9	4.5	.0	2.1
Neighbours toilet	.3	4.0	5.4	4.9	4.8	2.2	3.1	2.0	3.8
Total	99.4	95.7	58.3	60.4	80.6	93.8	79.6	100.0	79.8
Unimproved sanitation facility									
None	.6	4.3	41.5	39.6	19.1	6.2	20.4	.0	20.1
DK/Missing	.0	.0	.2	.0	.3	.0	.0	.0	.1
Total	.6	4.3	41.7	39.6	19.4	6.2	20.4	.0	20.2
Number of household members	5,482	8,250	11,151	7,131	7,523	9,312	874	43	24,884

Table A. 2 Use of sanitary means of excreta disposal Percent distribution of household population according to type of toilet used by the household and the percentage of household members using sanitary means of excreta disposal, Botswana, 2007

District	Type of toilet facility used by household								Unimproved sanitation facility			% of population using sanitary means of excreta disposal	Number of household members
	Improved sanitation facility								None	DK/ Missing	Total		
	Own Flush toilet	Own Ventilated Improved Pit Latrine (VIP)	Own Pit Latrine	Own Enviro-loo	Communal Flush toilet	Communal VIP	Communal Pit Latrine	Neighbours toilet					
Gaborone	54.7	19.5	23.2	0.0	0.5	0.3	1.5	0.0	0.1	0.0	100.0	99.9	2,561
Francistown	56.9	20.0	17.3	3.3	0.3	0.0	1.7	0.4	0.1	0.0	100.0	99.9	1,375
Lobatse	57.5	19.3	22.6	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.6	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	100.0	482
Selibe phikwe	42.9	24.8	23.8	0.0	0.2	0.0	2.4	1.5	4.2	0.0	100.0	95.8	705
Orapa	96.5	1.4	0.0	0.0	2.1	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	100.0	85
Jwaneng	74.9	0.0	23.5	0.0	0.0	0.0	1.6	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	100.0	221
Sowa	100.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	100.0	53
Southern	10.8	14.9	45.2	0.6	0.0	0.0	2.5	4.0	22.0	0.0	100.0	78.0	1,755
Borolong	11.6	24.9	34.2	0.0	0.0	0.0	3.1	1.9	24.3	0.0	100.0	75.7	689
Ngwaketse west	9.7	14.6	15.2	0.0	0.0	0.0	1.6	4.3	54.7	0.0	100.0	45.3	146
South east	37.7	21.9	32.7	0.2	0.2	0.0	0.4	2.9	4.0	0.0	100.0	96.0	959
Kweneng east	12.6	35.8	33.2	0.0	0.6	0.2	3.1	3.5	11.0	0.0	100.0	89.0	3,154
Kweneng west	0.4	10.8	12.4	0.6	0.6	0.0	2.9	1.1	71.4	0.0	100.0	28.6	573
Kgatleng	18.6	29.4	27.4	0.0	0.6	0.0	1.4	5.4	17.2	0.0	100.0	82.8	1,187
Serowe/Palapye	16.3	28.5	26.8	0.1	0.2	0.0	3.4	6.1	18.6	0.0	100.0	81.4	2,151
C.Mahalapye	13.0	24.3	36.6	0.0	1.2	0.1	1.6	3.9	19.3	0.0	100.0	80.7	1,410
C.Bobonong	7.9	15.9	27.4	0.5	0.1	0.0	1.3	2.9	41.7	2.3	100.0	56.0	1,026
Central-Boteti	4.2	14.5	38.9	0.5	0.2	0.1	1.9	10.9	28.9	0.0	100.0	71.1	550
Central -Tutume	6.9	14.9	29.8	0.6	0.0	0.0	3.5	5.3	38.9	0.0	100.0	61.1	1,928
North East	14.0	27.0	41.2	0.0	0.8	0.7	0.0	4.9	11.4	0.0	100.0	88.6	640
Ngamiland East	14.2	8.8	31.3	0.0	4.8	0.0	1.1	4.9	34.9	0.0	100.0	65.1	1,098
Ngamiland West	8.7	1.9	14.4	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	7.1	67.9	0.0	100.0	32.1	708
Chobe	25.8	7.4	33.8	0.0	4.5	0.0	0.8	8.6	19.0	0.0	100.0	81.0	215
Gantsi	16.8	9.8	23.7	0.0	2.4	0.0	0.0	5.9	41.5	0.0	100.0	58.5	543
Kgalagadi- south	17.0	1.6	55.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	2.6	9.9	13.6	0.0	100.0	86.4	373
Kgalagadi north	18.2	3.3	25.2	0.0	0.0	7.4	7.9	10.3	27.7	0.0	100.0	72.3	297
Total	22.8	20.5	29.4	0.3	0.6	0.2	2.1	3.8	20.1	0.1	100.0	79.8	24,884

Table A. 3 Percentage distribution of household population according to main source of drinking water and percentage of household members using improved drinking water sources, Botswana, 2007

	Place of residence			Educational level of household head					Total
	City/Town	Urban Village	Rural	No education or pre-school	Primary	Secondary +	Non-formal/Non-standard	DK/missing	
Improved sources									
Piped indoors	48.1	19.7	6.7	3.9	12.1	40.4	6.0	13.7	20.1
Tap in yard	37.7	64.7	26.6	36.2	49.2	38.8	51.0	84.3	41.7
Communal tap	12.1	12.0	45.0	41.3	26.8	15.4	31.9	.0	26.8
Borehole	.0	.0	9.3	8.7	3.6	1.0	6.8	.0	4.2
Rain water tank	.2	.0	.7	.7	.3	.2	.0	.0	.4
Bottled water from stores	.4	.4	.3	.2	.3	.5	.1	.0	.3
neighbors	1.3	3.1	2.7	2.1	3.3	2.2	3.3	2.0	2.5
Sub-Total	99.8	99.9	91.3	93.1	95.6	98.4	99.2	100.0	96.1
Unimproved sources									
Bouser/Tanker	.0	.1	1.1	.8	.4	.5	.0	.0	.5
Well	.0	.0	2.5	2.0	1.4	.4	.1	.0	1.1
River/Stream	.1	.0	2.9	2.4	1.4	.6	.1	.0	1.3
Dam/Pan/lake	.0	.0	2.1	1.8	1.2	.1	.6	.0	.9
Spring water	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0
Sub-Total	.2	.1	8.7	6.9	4.4	1.6	.8	.0	3.9
Number of household members	5,482	8,250	11,151	7,131	7,523	9,312	874	43	24,884

Table A. 4: Percent distribution of household population according to main source of drinking water and percentage of household members using improved drinking water sources, Botswana, 2007

Main source of drinking water															
Improved sources								Unimproved sources					Improved source of drinking water		
	Piped indoors	Tap in yard	Communal tap	Borehole	Rain water tank	Bottled water from stores	neighbors	Bousser/ Tanker	Well	River/ Stream	Dam/ Pan/ lake	Spring water	Total		Number of household members
Gaborone	49.0	36.8	12.9	0.0	0.0	0.7	0.6	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	100.0	2,561
Francistown	47.9	37.1	10.2	0.0	0.9	0.0	3.4	0.0	0.0	0.6	0.0	0.0	100.0	99.4	1,375
Lobatse	50.6	32.4	16.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.7	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	100.0	482
Selibe phikwe	32.2	51.3	15.7	0.0	0.0	0.2	0.6	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	100.0	705
Orapa	96.2	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	3.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.6	100.0	99.4	85
Jwaneng	54.8	43.1	1.6	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.4	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	100.0	221
Sowa	98.2	1.8	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	100.0	53
Southern	13.7	51.0	22.7	9.0	0.0	0.0	1.3	0.0	1.5	0.2	0.6	0.0	100.0	97.7	1,755
Borolong	7.0	45.8	40.0	0.4	0.4	0.0	1.7	0.0	4.8	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	95.2	689
Ngwaketse west	2.9	34.9	49.3	2.6	0.0	0.0	8.5	1.8	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	98.2	146
South east	30.6	62.8	3.3	1.2	0.1	0.3	0.9	0.2	0.0	0.0	0.7	0.0	100.0	99.1	959
Kweneng east	13.0	55.8	20.5	4.3	0.0	0.5	3.2	1.1	0.3	0.2	1.1	0.0	100.0	97.4	3,154
Kweneng west	1.1	12.1	54.1	21.3	0.0	0.0	0.5	0.6	4.0	5.3	1.0	0.0	100.0	89.1	573
Kgatlang	19.2	58.1	4.9	3.8	5.5	0.5	1.4	1.8	0.8	1.6	2.5	0.0	100.0	93.4	1,187
Serowe/Palapye	14.2	41.9	28.4	7.1	0.1	0.2	2.2	0.4	0.6	0.2	4.8	0.1	100.0	94.0	2,151
C.Mahalapye	12.6	38.0	36.5	6.7	0.3	0.1	2.3	2.1	0.6	0.4	0.3	0.1	100.0	96.5	1,410
Central - Bobonong	3.2	35.3	32.5	6.5	0.0	0.0	2.4	0.1	6.7	11.5	1.7	0.0	100.0	80.0	1,026
Central-Boteti	5.8	37.3	36.7	10.7	0.0	0.0	4.7	0.0	1.3	3.4	0.0	0.2	100.0	95.1	550
Central -Tutume	6.3	26.8	52.5	3.3	0.1	0.1	4.1	0.1	3.5	2.4	0.6	0.0	100.0	93.3	1,928
North East	15.2	50.1	26.6	0.2	0.0	2.0	3.7	0.2	0.6	0.0	1.4	0.0	100.0	97.8	640
Ngamiland East	9.5	40.1	35.1	5.4	0.0	1.0	2.2	0.4	0.1	6.2	0.0	0.0	100.0	93.3	1,098
Ngamiland West	4.7	14.4	75.9	2.1	0.0	0.0	1.1	0.4	1.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	98.2	708
Chobe	19.2	58.7	11.4	0.0	0.0	1.5	9.0	0.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	99.7	215
Gantsi	15.1	30.7	38.2	3.3	0.5	0.3	10.7	0.2	0.6	0.4	0.0	0.0	100.0	98.8	543
Kgalagadi- south	13.7	51.1	17.7	8.0	0.0	0.5	4.9	4.1	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	95.9	373
Kgalagadi north	20.6	19.3	52.1	0.0	0.0	0.0	6.9	1.1	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	100.0	98.9	297
Total	20.1	41.7	26.8	4.2	0.4	0.3	2.5	0.5	1.1	1.3	0.9	0.0	100.0	96.1	24,884

Table A. 5: Percentage of household population using both improved drinking water sources and sanitary means, Botswana 2007

	Percentage of household population using improved sources of drinking water	Percentage of household population using sanitary means of excreta disposal	Percentage of household population using improved sources of drinking water and using sanitary means of excreta disposal	Number of household members
Place of residence				
City/Town	99.6	76.3	76.0	5,482
Urban Village	99.6	50.6	50.2	8,250
Rural	91.1	24.2	24.0	11,152
Educational level of household head				
No education or pre-school	92.9	24.1	23.9	7,131
Primary	95.3	39.9	39.6	7,523
Secondary +	98.0	63.7	63.3	9,312
Non-formal/Non-standard	99.0	41.5	41.5	874
DK/missing	100.0	98.0	98.0	43
Total	95.8	44.4	44.1	24,884

Table A. 6: Percentage distribution of children aged 0-17 years according to living arrangements, Botswana 2007

District	Living with both parents	Living with neither parent				Living with mother only		Living with father only		Impossible to determine	Total	Not living with a biological parent	One or both parents dead	Number of children
		Only father alive	Only mother alive	Both are alive	Both are dead	Father alive	Father dead	Mother alive	Mother dead					
Gaborone	50.4	2.6	2.1	7.2	2.8	22.1	7.1	2.1	.9	2.7	100.0	14.7	15.8	701
Francistown	34.6	.8	3.1	11.5	2.3	24.2	13.7	2.3	2.1	5.5	100.0	17.5	22.5	504
Lobatse	35.7	3.1	5.3	12.4	2.4	26.5	6.7	1.8	.6	5.4	100.0	23.2	18.1	174
Selibe Phikwe	34.8	3.8	2.6	22.0	2.3	24.2	3.9	3.8	.0	2.6	100.0	30.5	13.3	264
Orapa	56.5	1.8	3.3	9.7	3.9	18.3	.0	2.3	1.8	2.3	100.0	18.8	10.9	26
Jwaneng	26.2	2.6	4.5	25.8	2.0	25.2	5.8	7.8	.0	.0	100.0	34.9	14.9	86
Sowa	41.1	2.1	6.8	17.5	.8	12.5	4.3	3.9	4.7	6.4	100.0	27.2	21.2	22
Ngwaketse	24.0	1.4	4.2	22.9	3.6	23.6	10.6	1.6	.3	7.7	100.0	32.0	21.3	769
Borolong	20.4	3.6	3.4	24.5	5.6	23.2	8.7	2.9	.3	7.6	100.0	37.0	22.0	314
Ngwaketse West	11.7	6.1	3.4	26.9	3.4	35.1	6.2	2.8	.0	4.4	100.0	39.8	19.8	67
South East	25.2	1.7	1.0	17.8	2.1	27.8	11.4	2.9	.0	10.1	100.0	22.6	17.7	299
Kweneng East	27.0	2.8	3.1	15.6	2.9	29.1	9.8	3.7	.3	5.5	100.0	24.4	20.0	1,192
Kweneng West	31.3	.5	2.1	24.8	3.3	22.2	6.6	3.5	.3	5.4	100.0	30.8	13.6	258
Kgatleng	26.1	4.5	3.8	18.4	1.4	31.5	9.2	1.1	.3	3.7	100.0	28.2	20.1	483
Serowe/Palapye	23.8	2.2	4.5	18.5	3.7	29.5	10.1	1.3	.7	5.7	100.0	28.8	22.8	867
C.-Mahalapye	20.3	2.1	3.9	18.3	2.0	29.8	9.9	2.9	.3	10.4	100.0	26.3	20.8	599
C-Bobonong	18.0	4.6	10.3	22.1	4.1	22.3	13.0	1.8	.0	3.8	100.0	41.1	33.0	548
Central-Boteti	15.3	4.5	6.1	27.2	2.4	27.1	11.2	1.9	.0	4.4	100.0	40.1	24.5	212
Central -Tutume	24.2	2.2	5.1	16.1	3.3	28.4	11.6	1.4	.7	7.0	100.0	26.7	23.9	937
North East	10.9	5.6	2.1	21.0	7.7	27.3	16.7	1.8	.6	6.3	100.0	36.3	34.1	310
Ngamiland East	25.8	2.5	4.2	19.4	3.0	27.9	11.4	3.3	.2	2.3	100.0	29.1	21.3	480
Ngamiland West	24.1	1.8	3.2	13.4	4.6	32.2	13.6	3.4	.4	3.2	100.0	23.0	23.7	330
Chobe	17.6	.6	8.5	23.8	6.0	20.9	16.3	2.2	.0	4.0	100.0	38.9	32.1	88
Ghanzi	28.4	6.0	4.1	17.9	2.9	21.0	9.1	3.2	1.9	5.5	100.0	30.8	25.0	227
Kgalagadi- South	34.9	3.7	4.1	16.5	3.7	25.5	3.1	4.8	2.6	1.1	100.0	27.9	17.1	172
Kgalagadi North	40.7	1.2	4.2	10.0	6.1	18.3	7.6	5.9	.0	6.1	100.0	21.4	19.7	130
Total	26.9	2.7	4.1	17.7	3.3	26.6	10.2	2.5	.6	5.5	100.0	27.8	21.7	10,060

FERTILITY

Table A. 7: Age specific and total fertility rate for the 3 year period preceding the survey by place of residence, Botswana 2007

Age group	Place of residence			Total
	City/Town	Urban villages	Rural	
15-19	0.033	0.057	0.098	0.066
20-24	0.117	0.143	0.200	0.152
25-29	0.088	0.114	0.174	0.127
30-34	0.102	0.106	0.126	0.112
35-39	0.067	0.073	0.107	0.084
40-44	0.038	0.027	0.039	0.035
45-49	0.006	0.003	0.022	0.012
Total fertility rate (TFR)	2.3	2.6	3.8	2.9

Table A. 8: Births, exposure, and age specific fertility rate (ASFR) for three year periods preceding the survey by mother's age at the time of birth and total fertility rate (TFR) in cities and towns, Botswana 2007

		Number of years preceding the survey				
		0-2	3-5	6-8	9-11	12-14
Births	15-19	231	256	274	288	285
	20-24	590	519	507	408	416
	25-29	409	377	346	293	300
	30-34	283	238	216	198	201
	35-39	172	127	115	120	33
	40-44	53	44	30	1	.
	45-49	10	2	.	.	.
Exposure	15-19	3,500	3,765	3,831	3,350	2,997
	20-24	3,872	3,540	3,097	2,703	2,293
	25-29	3,215	2,861	2,386	2,156	1,789
	30-34	2,530	2,225	1,928	1,590	1,,401
	35-39	2,053	1,675	1,471	1,065	289
	40-44	1,527	1,271	537	24	.
	45-49	809	111	.	.	.
Age Specific Fertility Rate	15-19	66	68	71	86	95
	20-24	152	147	164	151	181
	25-29	127	132	145	136	168
	30-34	112	107	112	124	144
	35-39	84	76	78	113	113
	40-44	35	35	57	29	.
	45-49	12	17	.	.	.
Total Fertility Rate		2.9	2.9	3.1	3.2	3.5

Table A. 9: Births, exposure, and age specific fertility rate (ASFR) for three year periods preceding the survey by mother's age at the time of birth and total fertility rate (TFR) in urban villages, Botswana 2007

		Number of years preceding the survey				
		0-2	3-5	6-8	9-11	12-14
Births	15-19	29	56	55	57	65
	20-24	146	121	122	119	115
	25-29	82	102	86	63	67
	30-34	79	42	43	48	50
	35-39	38	20	23	21	2
	40-44	15	9	3	0	.
	45-49	1	0	.	.	.
	8	0	.	.	.	.
Exposure	15-19	900	1,152	1,208	974	903
	20-24	1,240	1,050	909	839	676
	25-29	932	880	723	602	465
	30-34	779	637	519	408	354
	35-39	565	430	374	256	68
	40-44	390	318	124	7	.
	45-49	190	25	.	.	.
	8	0	.	.	.	.
Age Specific Fertility Rate	15-19	33	49	46	59	72
	20-24	117	116	134	142	170
	25-29	88	116	119	104	144
	30-34	102	66	83	119	140
	35-39	67	46	62	81	30
	40-44	38	29	27	0	.
	45-49	6	0	.	.	.
	8	0	.	.	.	.
Total Fertility Rate		2.3	2.1	2.4	2.5	2.8

Table A. 10: Births, exposure, and age specific fertility rate (ASFR) for three year periods preceding the survey by mother's age at the time of birth and total fertility rate (TFR) in rural, Botswana 2007

		Number of years preceding the survey				
		0-2	3-5	6-8	9-11	12-14
Births	15-19	73	88	101	101	102
	20-24	206	185	155	116	130
	25-29	134	112	106	106	100
	30-34	90	71	76	58	55
	35-39	54	40	33	33	18
	40-44	14	8	7	0	.
	45-49	1	1	.	.	.
Exposure	15-19	1,289	1,388	1,449	1,253	1,016
	20-24	1,440	1,346	1,089	895	814
	25-29	1,176	951	822	778	641
	30-34	849	802	691	555	446
	35-39	739	595	478	343	104
	40-44	515	403	184	9	.
	45-49	266	44	.	.	.
Age Specific Fertility Rate	15-19	57	64	70	81	101
	20-24	143	137	142	129	159
	25-29	114	118	129	136	156
	30-34	106	89	110	104	123
	35-39	73	67	70	97	168
	40-44	27	20	39	0	.
	45-49	3	22	.	.	.
Total Fertility Rate		2.6	2.6	2.8	2.7	3.5

Table A. 11: Percentage of women aged 12-49 years by knowledge of contraceptive methods by district, Botswana, 2007

District	Percent of women who have heard about:										Any traditional method	Any modern method	Any method	Number of women
	Pill	IUCD	Injection	Diaphragm/Jelly	Condom	Female Sterilization	Male Sterilization	Periodic Abstinence	Withdrawal	Other				
Gaborone	90.9	84.8	88.4	59.1	97.2	65.4	57.1	65.1	63.5	4.7	78.5	98.3	98.3	930
Francistown	90.5	84.1	90.6	58.9	98.4	69.8	59.4	58.4	55.2	3.5	76.4	99.4	99.4	436
Lobatse	91.7	82.7	93.0	59.4	97.5	66.6	55.1	63.0	60.7	3.7	78.0	99.3	99.3	160
Selibe Phikwe	91.4	81.7	91.0	50.9	99.2	66.7	63.5	59.0	56.2	6.1	75.5	100.0	100.0	246
Orapa	94.9	84.9	92.8	58.7	98.3	76.5	65.8	58.4	55.0	6.2	73.3	100.0	100.0	27
Jwaneng	87.7	75.0	85.8	47.8	99.0	67.5	56.7	59.7	53.6	11.6	69.5	99.0	99.0	83
Sowa	89.2	80.2	89.8	59.6	100.0	65.8	50.2	67.8	58.8	3.7	81.7	100.0	100.0	17
Souther	90.7	76.2	89.0	53.2	97.5	65.4	55.5	55.7	51.9	4.7	70.7	99.6	99.6	427
Borolong	85.8	80.6	87.1	51.9	94.8	63.0	51.1	53.6	51.7	4.9	69.4	98.9	99.3	170
Ngwaketse West	72.2	48.7	81.6	21.8	95.6	40.6	36.5	35.1	37.2	.0	44.6	98.2	98.2	33
South East	89.4	81.8	89.4	65.0	97.7	68.4	57.4	65.4	58.5	5.1	76.8	99.2	99.2	318
Kweneng East	88.8	73.0	88.0	51.3	96.4	60.2	51.0	55.4	52.3	5.0	70.9	97.5	97.7	921
Kweneng West	75.0	51.2	75.9	29.9	88.8	37.9	34.2	24.9	27.6	4.4	42.9	91.2	92.0	122
Kgatleng	89.7	83.2	90.8	65.5	96.6	65.8	57.7	57.7	57.7	4.1	75.9	98.2	98.2	295
Serowe/Palapye	88.7	76.4	88.3	52.1	97.9	66.5	57.9	60.8	55.2	4.2	71.8	99.6	99.6	537
Central -Mahalapye	90.0	70.3	86.3	44.7	96.3	57.9	53.7	52.4	48.1	1.9	68.1	100.0	100.0	331
Central -Bobonong	82.1	67.0	81.3	40.4	93.9	53.1	50.5	35.5	39.7	3.8	58.0	97.4	97.4	247
Central-Boteti	84.9	78.2	84.7	55.0	97.4	66.0	58.3	51.0	49.7	5.5	63.0	97.4	97.4	139
Central -Tutume	84.2	66.7	82.6	45.1	95.8	55.4	42.7	48.0	49.5	3.8	66.3	97.0	97.2	462
North East	83.5	66.9	82.7	47.0	95.7	55.1	43.1	57.0	44.0	1.5	68.6	100.0	100.0	168
Ngamiland East	90.2	73.8	87.7	51.5	95.3	63.7	52.6	51.3	49.8	3.1	71.6	98.4	98.4	299
Ngamiland West	72.6	45.2	72.9	28.3	90.3	40.0	35.3	38.3	37.7	2.9	49.6	92.0	92.0	193
Chobe	87.2	73.9	94.2	51.6	96.3	57.3	47.3	67.6	54.0	.9	77.6	99.1	99.1	63
Ghanzi	78.2	56.6	83.8	34.7	96.0	43.2	30.0	40.6	31.1	1.1	50.5	98.2	98.7	131
Kgalagadi- South	82.3	75.8	87.4	53.9	93.3	57.9	54.4	50.1	44.6	.0	66.8	97.4	97.4	97
Kgalagadi North	91.1	60.2	91.8	33.3	95.2	52.0	40.9	47.6	42.9	6.8	75.3	95.2	95.2	63
Total	87.8	75.0	87.1	51.7	96.5	61.5	52.7	55.2	52.4	4.1	70.5	98.3	98.3	6,916

Table A. 12: Percentage of men aged 12-49 years by knowledge of contraceptive methods by district, Botswana, 2007

District	Percent of men who have heard about:										Any traditional method	Any modern method	Any method	Number of men
	Pill	IUC D	Injection	Diaphragm/Jelly	Condom	Female Sterilization	Male Sterilization	Periodic Abstinence	Withdrawal	Other				
Gaborone	81.1	69.4	77.6	49.9	96.3	62.0	56.9	61.6	63.4	2.9	77.2	97.4	97.4	813
Francistown	84.8	71.3	79.1	56.8	96.4	70.9	61.2	53.7	60.2	3.9	73.2	98.3	98.3	387
Lobatse	82.8	77.0	87.3	56.3	95.9	68.2	57.9	66.8	65.4	3.0	78.1	97.6	97.6	134
Selibe Phikwe	83.5	73.2	79.2	39.8	97.3	55.0	54.1	51.4	58.3	4.4	72.0	98.7	98.7	193
Orapa	86.7	78.6	95.3	51.6	98.2	68.6	63.6	62.6	62.6	2.5	78.6	100.0	100.0	25
Jwaneng	79.2	70.0	86.5	44.6	96.9	67.0	65.1	64.4	65.2	.0	80.7	100.0	100.0	56
Sowa	94.5	82.2	93.8	53.1	100.0	63.0	59.6	69.9	64.6	1.8	81.6	100.0	100.0	16
Ngwaketse	69.9	57.6	71.0	36.7	94.7	52.6	46.9	46.2	45.0	1.7	65.4	95.4	95.4	390
Borolong	67.9	65.9	76.1	35.3	97.9	56.4	53.6	35.1	39.5	.0	61.6	98.5	98.5	150
Ngwaketse West	44.9	45.7	66.3	23.4	92.5	40.7	40.5	48.2	46.4	.0	59.4	96.7	96.7	28
South East	75.2	64.0	74.2	44.6	96.5	56.5	45.4	47.5	53.4	2.6	72.7	98.2	98.7	251
Kweneng East	70.4	60.5	71.7	41.0	94.5	52.9	49.5	50.3	50.9	2.1	65.7	95.0	95.1	839
Kweneng West	54.4	44.3	58.1	21.8	84.7	34.6	31.3	21.1	29.5	.0	43.4	89.1	89.1	128
Kgatleng	69.3	64.5	71.9	46.0	95.5	59.1	53.0	51.6	48.4	.7	67.4	96.2	96.2	291
Serowe/Palapye	74.7	64.8	74.3	42.6	96.9	52.7	48.8	54.4	50.2	2.7	66.6	98.2	98.3	515
C.Mahalapye	66.0	48.7	68.6	29.2	97.1	45.0	44.2	43.3	45.7	2.2	60.3	97.6	97.6	323
C.Bobonong	57.9	43.9	60.5	25.6	94.1	33.8	31.5	25.7	32.4	1.8	42.0	95.5	95.5	217
Central-Boteti	64.5	64.8	71.9	33.0	96.1	52.4	41.8	44.9	49.1	3.8	67.2	97.9	97.9	114
Central -Tutume	74.3	59.4	72.7	36.1	95.9	49.0	43.5	42.3	48.6	1.3	61.6	97.2	97.2	383
North East	64.1	56.3	67.4	38.3	93.8	53.1	47.0	53.8	54.4	.6	71.7	94.4	94.8	124
Ngamiland East	75.0	57.9	69.6	36.9	92.7	53.2	49.7	46.3	41.5	2.9	56.6	96.8	96.8	251
Ngamiland West	63.6	46.0	63.8	23.8	97.0	31.0	32.2	32.9	29.1	2.4	50.8	97.0	98.1	140
Chobe	83.0	72.1	89.7	47.8	97.6	64.8	57.1	57.9	63.1	.8	81.0	98.4	98.4	55
Ghanzi	64.4	55.6	76.5	44.3	91.8	52.6	42.8	45.2	39.4	.7	60.7	95.5	95.5	108
Kgalagadi- South	64.7	45.7	63.6	35.3	95.2	35.6	32.5	30.9	34.7	2.5	50.9	96.3	96.3	96
Kgalagadi North	71.9	58.3	76.0	29.8	89.0	51.3	51.3	52.8	42.7	3.6	65.9	91.0	91.0	73
Total	72.9	61.6	73.2	40.9	95.4	53.9	49.0	49.0	50.3	2.2	66.1	96.7	96.8	6,101

Table A. 13: Percentage of women aged 12-49 years by current use of contraceptive methods by district, Botswana, 2007

District	Percent of women or their spouse currently using:										Any traditional method	Any modern method	Any method	Number of women
	Pill	IUCD	Injection	Diaphragm/ Jelly	Condom	Female Sterilization	Male Sterilization	Periodic Abstinence	Withdrawal	Other				
Gaborone	4.9	1.3	4.7	.7	50.3	2.4	.4	3.2	.5	.3	3.9	58.7	60.4	930
Francistown	3.6	.6	4.0	1.4	49.8	2.9	.0	1.2	.8	.5	2.8	57.1	58.6	436
Lobatse	7.8	.0	3.0	.7	48.1	2.6	.0	1.9	.0	.0	1.9	56.7	58.6	160
Selibe Phikwe	6.9	.8	3.9	.4	48.7	1.6	.0	1.0	.3	1.3	2.6	52.7	54.7	246
Orapa	5.7	.0	9.2	.0	46.7	3.2	.0	3.4	2.1	.0	5.4	59.1	64.6	27
Jwaneng	3.3	.0	6.3	1.0	43.6	1.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	1.0	50.6	50.6	83
Sowa	9.3	1.0	5.8	2.0	53.1	2.0	.0	2.1	.0	1.0	3.1	59.2	61.3	17
Ngwaketse	5.4	.6	7.3	.7	32.8	3.3	.0	2.9	.6	.0	3.3	45.0	47.6	427
Borolong	8.0	.5	8.3	.7	33.9	2.5	.0	1.9	1.0	.0	2.9	46.5	47.2	170
Ngwaketse West	8.9	.0	5.6	1.1	28.6	4.1	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	42.3	42.3	33
South East	3.6	.8	4.3	.5	46.7	3.9	.0	3.1	1.1	.4	4.6	53.7	56.7	318
Kweneng East	7.0	1.5	5.7	.3	40.2	1.7	.3	2.2	.5	.0	3.0	50.2	52.3	921
Kweneng West	2.3	.0	10.6	.0	22.8	2.0	.0	1.6	.5	.0	2.1	34.1	36.1	122
Kgatleng	9.7	.5	8.7	.0	39.8	1.0	.3	.9	1.0	.3	2.3	49.9	50.9	295
Central-Serowe/Palapye	6.2	.4	7.1	.4	44.3	2.4	.0	.5	.7	.3	1.3	53.5	53.8	537
C.Mahalapye	6.8	1.0	6.3	1.7	41.8	.9	.0	.6	.0	.0	.6	50.3	51.0	331
C.Bobonong	6.7	.0	6.5	.6	36.6	1.9	.0	1.0	.0	1.2	2.4	45.4	47.2	247
Central-Boteti	8.3	.5	10.6	.0	40.0	2.6	.0	.5	1.0	.0	1.5	49.8	49.8	139
Central -Tutume	4.1	.6	7.1	.5	34.0	1.0	.0	2.2	1.0	.2	3.3	42.2	44.1	462
North East	7.4	.5	7.4	1.3	42.8	2.7	.6	1.7	.9	.0	2.6	51.7	52.9	168
Ngamiland East	8.4	.9	12.5	1.5	43.3	1.9	.0	.2	.2	.0	.7	57.4	57.8	299
Ngamiland West	11.5	.7	12.2	.0	28.8	.7	.0	.0	.0	.0	.2	43.8	44.1	193
Chobe	5.8	1.0	2.6	.0	59.2	3.1	.8	.8	2.0	.0	2.8	67.1	67.1	63
Ghanzi	4.2	.0	9.0	.0	25.0	1.7	.0	.4	.0	.0	.4	35.7	36.1	131
Kgalagadi- South	4.1	.0	13.0	.0	35.2	.5	.0	6.2	1.7	.0	7.8	48.0	54.4	97
Kgalagadi North	4.2	.0	18.6	.0	47.0	1.0	.0	2.4	.0	.0	2.4	66.0	68.4	63
Total	6.1	.8	6.8	.6	41.7	2.1	.1	1.8	.6	.2	2.6	51.2	52.8	6,916

Table A. 14: Percentage of men aged 12-49 years by current use of contraceptive methods by district, Botswana, 2007

Percent of men or the spouse currently using:														
District	Pill	IUCD	Injection	Diaphra m/ Jelly	Condom	Female Steriliz ation	Male Steriliz ation	Periodic Abstinence	Withd rawal	Other	Any traditio nal method	Any modern method	Any method	Number of men
Gaborone	3.1	.3	1.6	.2	52.5	1.7	1.0	5.8	.5	.2	6.3	56.3	60.4	813
Francistown	1.9	.3	.6	.4	57.8	1.8	.0	.6	1.3	.2	2.1	61.1	62.6	387
Lobatse	2.3	.0	.0	1.7	48.4	.0	.0	4.3	.0	.0	4.3	51.7	52.5	134
Selibe Phikwe	3.8	.0	1.4	1.5	52.9	.2	.0	.8	.4	1.2	2.4	57.1	57.7	193
Orapa	5.0	.0	.0	2.5	63.3	4.2	.0	3.9	4.3	.0	6.4	67.6	69.7	25
Jwaneng	1.9	.0	1.9	.0	73.2	1.5	.0	3.4	.0	.0	3.4	76.6	80.0	56
Sowa	2.2	.0	2.9	.0	59.5	.0	1.1	4.1	1.1	.0	5.2	65.7	69.1	16
Ngwaketse	1.3	.0	1.2	.3	33.6	1.1	.0	5.2	.4	.0	5.6	34.4	38.7	390
Borolong	2.3	.0	.7	.0	40.8	.5	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	42.0	42.0	150
Ngwaketse West	3.5	.0	3.8	2.1	39.8	.0	3.3	1.4	.0	.0	1.4	45.7	45.7	28
South East	4.8	.4	2.0	.4	50.0	2.0	.0	3.3	.7	.0	4.0	53.6	55.1	251
Kweneng East	4.9	.6	1.3	.2	44.2	.5	.1	4.3	.8	.2	5.2	46.6	49.0	839
Kweneng West	3.9	.0	.9	1.1	24.5	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	28.1	28.1	128
Kgatleng	3.9	.4	1.5	.3	35.3	.0	.0	.4	.0	.0	.4	36.6	36.6	291
Serowe/Palapye	2.0	.2	1.3	.4	46.9	.6	.0	.9	.4	.1	1.7	48.7	49.6	515
Central -Mahalapye	2.4	.0	.2	.4	49.7	1.3	.0	1.2	.3	.0	1.7	52.2	53.4	323
Central -Bobonong	1.4	.7	.8	1.7	27.7	.4	.5	1.4	.0	1.4	3.1	31.3	34.0	217
Central-Boteti	2.7	.0	1.9	.0	46.6	.3	.0	3.0	.0	.6	3.6	47.8	51.4	114
Central -Tutume	2.1	.0	2.0	.3	39.4	.0	.0	.6	.8	.3	1.7	41.2	42.4	383
North East	5.4	.0	.6	1.7	48.1	.0	.0	5.7	.0	.0	6.9	49.8	56.1	124
Ngamiland East	3.2	.0	2.1	3.0	40.0	1.7	.0	1.5	1.4	.0	2.4	47.1	47.6	251
Ngamiland West	5.5	.0	2.0	1.2	51.7	.0	.0	2.0	2.7	.0	5.1	54.3	56.9	140
Chobe	1.1	.0	.0	.0	59.4	.0	.0	1.9	.0	.0	3.8	60.5	61.3	55
Ghanzi	.7	.0	2.2	1.3	29.2	.5	.0	2.5	.0	.0	3.2	31.9	34.6	108
Kgalagadi- South	2.1	.0	4.9	.0	42.6	1.9	.0	1.5	.5	.0	2.1	45.3	46.8	96
Kgalagadi North	1.1	.0	5.8	.0	39.7	.0	.0	6.1	.8	.0	6.1	44.7	47.5	73
Total	3.0	.2	1.4	.6	45.1	.9	.2	2.7	.6	.2	3.6	47.9	50.0	6,101

Table A. 15: Percentage of females currently using pill by pill brand, source and district, Botswana, 2007

District	Pill Brand					Other	Total
	Nordette	Microval	Triphasil	Other	not able to show		
Gaborone	53.8	1.9	-	21.2	23.1	-	52
Francistown	62.5	-	-	6.3	31.3	-	16
Lobatse	41.7	16.7	-	-	41.7	-	12
Selibe Phikwe	75.0	-	-	10.0	10.0	5.0	20
Orapa	66.7	-	33.3	-	-	-	3
Jwaneng	66.7	33.3	-	-	-	-	3
Sowa	50.0	-	-	-	50.0	-	8
Ngwaketse	77.8	7.4	-	-	14.8	-	27
Borolong	83.3	16.7	-	-	-	-	12
Ngwaketse West	88.9	11.1	-	-	-	-	9
South East	62.5	-	-	37.5	-	-	8
Kweneng East	62.5	10.7	1.8	12.5	12.5	-	56
Kweneng West	80.0	20.0	-	-	-	-	5
Kgatleng	50.0	27.3	4.5	4.5	13.6	-	22
Serowe/Palapye	48.6	8.1	5.4	10.8	27.0	-	37
Central -Mahalapye	57.1	9.5	-	4.8	28.6	-	21
Central -Bobonong	70.0	-	-	-	30.0	-	10
Central-Boteti	69.2	-	-	-	30.8	-	13
Central -Tutume	68.4	-	-	5.3	26.3	-	19
North East	54.5	-	-	18.2	27.3	-	11
Ngamiland East	55.6	7.4	3.7	11.1	22.2	-	27
Ngamiland West	61.9	-	-	4.8	33.3	-	21
Chobe	71.4	-	-	-	28.6	-	7
Ghanzi	40.0	-	-	-	60.0	-	10
Kgalagadi- South	83.3	-	-	-	16.7	-	6
Kgalagadi North	50.0	25.0	-	25.0	-	-	4
Total	61.3	6.8	1.4	8.7	21.6	0.2	439

MATERNAL CARE

Table A. 16: Percentage distribution of women aged 12-49 who gave birth in the two years preceding the survey by type of personnel providing antenatal care, Botswana, 2007

	Person providing antenatal care								Number of antenatal care visits			Time of first antenatal care visits				Total	Number of women who gave birth in the preceding two years
									1-4 times	More than 4 times	No antenatal care/traditional care/missing	1-4 month	More than 4 months	No antenatal care/traditional care/missing			
	Medical doctor	Nurse/midwife	Auxiliary midwife	Traditional birth attendant	Relative /Friend	Spiritua l healer	No antenat al care received	Any skilled personnel	1-4 times	More than 4 times	No antenatal care/traditional care/missing	1-4 month	More than 4 months	No antenatal care/traditional care/missing			
Place of residence																	
City/ Town	10.0	83.7	1.1	.4	1.2	.0	3.6	94.8	17.8	77.3	4.9	58.1	37.0	4.9	100.0	315	
Urban	6.1	87.5	.0	1.8	.8	.4	3.4	93.6	18.8	75.4	5.8	48.4	45.8	5.8	100.0	469	
Village																	
Rural	4.8	88.7	.6	1.0	.1	.1	4.7	94.1	24.6	69.7	5.7	54.0	40.1	5.9	100.0	613	
Age																	
15-19	3.7	85.8	.0	2.8	.0	.0	7.6	89.6	25.5	64.1	10.4	41.2	47.0	11.8	100.0	91	
20-24	4.7	89.3	.4	.8	.8	.1	3.9	94.4	20.7	74.0	5.3	49.0	45.8	5.3	100.0	436	
25-29	7.1	87.3	.6	1.3	.5	.5	2.6	95.1	21.0	74.6	4.4	56.6	39.0	4.4	100.0	383	
30-34	6.5	85.5	.8	.9	.4	.0	6.0	92.7	20.2	72.5	7.3	53.9	38.8	7.3	100.0	239	
35-39	10.2	83.7	.0	1.3	1.1	.0	3.7	93.9	22.3	72.5	5.2	60.7	34.1	5.2	100.0	183	
40-49	6.4	89.8	2.3	.0	.0	.0	1.6	98.4	19.0	79.4	1.6	51.4	47.0	1.6	100.0	65	
Total	6.4	87.2	.5	1.1	.6	.2	4.0	94.1	21.1	73.3	5.5	53.0	41.3	5.6	100.0	1,397	

Table A. 17: Percentage distribution of women aged 12-49 who gave birth in the two years preceding the survey by type of personnel providing antenatal care, Botswana, 2007

	Person providing antenatal care								Number of antenatal care visits			Time of first antenatal care visits			Total	Number of women who gave birth in the preceding two years
	Medical doctor	Nurse/ midwife	Auxiliary midwife	Traditional birth attendant	Relative / Friend	Spiritual healer	No antenatal care received	Any skilled personnel	1-4 times	More than 4 times	No antenatal care/ traditional care/ missing	1-4 mont h	More than 4 months	No antenatal care/ traditional care/ missing		
Place of residence																
City/Town	10.0	83.7	1.1	.4	1.2	.0	3.6	94.8	17.8	77.3	4.9	58.1	37.0	4.9	100.0	315
Urban	6.1	87.5	.0	1.8	.8	.4	3.4	93.6	18.8	75.4	5.8	48.4	45.8	5.8	100.0	469
Village																
Rural	4.8	88.7	.6	1.0	.1	.1	4.7	94.1	24.6	69.7	5.7	54.0	40.1	5.9	100.0	613
Age																
15-19	3.7	85.8	.0	2.8	.0	.0	7.6	89.6	25.5	64.1	10.4	41.2	47.0	11.8	100.0	91
20-24	4.7	89.3	.4	.8	.8	.1	3.9	94.4	20.7	74.0	5.3	49.0	45.8	5.3	100.0	436
25-29	7.1	87.3	.6	1.3	.5	.5	2.6	95.1	21.0	74.6	4.4	56.6	39.0	4.4	100.0	383
30-34	6.5	85.5	.8	.9	.4	.0	6.0	92.7	20.2	72.5	7.3	53.9	38.8	7.3	100.0	239
35-39	10.2	83.7	.0	1.3	1.1	.0	3.7	93.9	22.3	72.5	5.2	60.7	34.1	5.2	100.0	183
40-49	6.4	89.8	2.3	.0	.0	.0	1.6	98.4	19.0	79.4	1.6	51.4	47.0	1.6	100.0	65
Total	6.4	87.2	.5	1.1	.6	.2	4.0	94.1	21.1	73.3	5.5	53.0	41.3	5.6	100.0	1,397

Table A. 18: Percentage of mothers with a birth in the last 24 months protected against neonatal tetanus, Botswana, 2007

	Received at least 2 doses during last pregnancy	Received at least 2 doses, the last within prior 3 years	Received at least 3 doses, the last within 5 years	Received at least 4 doses, the last within 10 years	Received at least 5 doses during lifetime	Protected against tetanus	Number of mothers
Place of residence							
City/Town	49.9	23.2	.3	.0	.0	73.5	315
Urban Village	51.0	20.3	.2	.3	.2	72.0	469
Rural	47.6	18.6	.1	.0	.1	66.4	613
Age							
15-19	50.8	11.3	.0	.0	.0	62.2	91
20-24	51.8	11.4	.2	.0	.0	63.4	436
25-29	50.7	21.4	.5	.3	.0	73.0	383
30-34	44.7	28.8	.0	.0	.0	73.5	239
35-39	42.2	32.8	.0	.0	.0	75.0	183
40-49	58.3	17.1	.0	.0	2.5	77.9	65
Educational level of members							
No education	37.1	25.3	.0	.0	2.0	64.4	82
Pre-school	45.5	.0	.0	.0	.0	45.5	3
Primary	45.4	29.8	.0	.5	.0	75.6	270
Secondary	51.2	17.2	.3	.0	.0	68.7	1,037
Non-formal/Non-standard	51.9	48.1	.0	.0	.0	100.0	5
Total	49.3	20.2	.2	.1	.1	69.9	1,397

Table A. 19: Percentage distribution of women aged 15-49 with a birth in two years preceding the survey by type of personnel assisting at delivery Botswana, 2007

	Person assisting at delivery										
	Medical doctor	Nurse/ midwife	Auxiliary midwife	Traditional birth attendant	Relative/ friend	No attendant	DK/ missing	Total	Any skilled personnel	Delivered in health facility	Number of women who gave birth in preceding two years
Place of residence											
City/Town	29.1	70.2	.0	.3	.3	.1	.0	100.0	99.3	99.1	315
Urban Village	18.9	78.1	.2	.2	1.2	.9	.4	100.0	97.2	97.5	469
Rural	18.4	71.1	.7	2.8	5.1	1.8	.1	100.0	90.2	88.2	613
Age											
15-19	14.3	76.9	.0	3.4	4.7	.7	.0	100.0	91.3	89.6	91
20-24	21.4	72.8	.2	.8	3.5	1.1	.2	100.0	94.4	94.0	436
25-29	22.2	75.5	.0	.5	1.7	.1	.0	100.0	97.7	96.7	383
30-34	22.9	71.1	.5	1.5	2.4	1.0	.7	100.0	94.5	93.8	239
35-39	17.1	73.0	1.0	3.8	2.4	2.7	.0	100.0	91.1	89.9	183
40-49	24.6	66.5	1.6	.0	3.3	4.0	.0	100.0	92.7	91.4	65
Educational level of members											
No education	4.6	74.3	1.3	7.9	8.5	3.4	.0	100.0	80.2	76.5	82
Pre-school	100.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	3
Primary	19.4	67.6	.7	2.7	6.5	2.5	.6	100.0	87.7	87.5	270
Secondary	22.6	75.0	.2	.5	1.3	.3	.1	100.0	97.8	97.1	1,037
Non-formal/Non-standard	.0	32.3	.0	.0	.0	67.7	.0	100.0	32.3	32.3	5
Total	21.0	73.2	.4	1.4	2.7	1.1	.2	100.0	94.6	93.8	1,397

Table A. 20: Percentage distribution of children who have ever been breastfed by district, Botswana 2007

District	Has...ever been breastfed			Total
	Yes	No	dont know	
Gaborone	79.8	20.2	-	163
Francistown	70.7	29.3	-	116
Lobatse	90.0	10.0	-	30
Selibe Phikwe	75.7	24.3	-	70
Orapa	85.7	14.3	-	7
Jwaneng	86.4	13.6	-	22
Sowa	66.7	33.3	-	6
Southern	77.7	22.3	-	215
Borolong	77.5	22.5	-	80
Ngwaketse West	80.0	20.0	-	15
South East	82.8	12.6	4.6	87
Kweneng East	76.3	23.4	0.3	308
Kweneng West	85.9	14.1	-	64
Kgatleng	77.4	21.0	1.6	124
Serowe/Palapye	72.0	26.6	1.4	214
Central -Mahalapye	69.5	30.5	-	151
Central -Bobonong	73.9	26.1	-	111
Central-Boteti	72.9	27.1	-	59
Central -Tutume	69.8	28.6	1.6	255
North East	84.0	16.0	-	75
Ngamiland East	76.8	22.5	0.7	138
Ngamiland West	83.9	16.1	-	87
Chobe	52.6	47.4	-	19
Ghanzi	84.4	15.6	-	45
Kgalagadi- South	87.2	12.8	-	39
Kgalagadi North	89.2	10.8	-	37
Toatal	76.4	23.0	0.6	2,537

Table A. 21: Percentage of children aged 0-59 months in the last four weeks taken to a health provider, Botswana, 2007

	Had acute respiratory infection	Number of children aged 0-59 months	Govt. hospital	Govt. clinic	Govt. health post	Family welfare educator	Mobile/outreach clinic	Private hospital/clinic	Private doctor	Private pharmacy	Mobile clinic	Relative or friend	Shop	Traditional practitioner	Any appropriate provider	Number of children aged 0-59 months with suspected pneumonia
Sex																
Male	6.8	1360	14.7	64.7	.0	.0	.0	2.2	3.7	.4	1.0	2.7	.0	.0	86.2	92
Female	4.6	1342	14.2	59.2	6.4	.0	.0	6.0	1.7	.0	.0	1.4	.0	.0	86.1	62
Place of residence																
City/Town	5.5	450	14.1	47.5	.0	.0	.0	15.6	15.8	.0	3.6	.0	.0	.0	96.6	25
Urban Village	5.1	885	16.8	58.4	.0	.0	.0	2.2	1.3	.0	.0	2.8	.0	.0	78.6	45
Rural	6.2	1367	13.4	69.1	4.7	.0	.0	1.0	.0	.5	.0	2.5	.0	.0	87.1	84
Age																
0-11 months	5.2	550	9.6	79.9	5.4	.0	.0	.0	6.2	.0	.0	1.8	.0	.0	98.2	28
12-23 months	5.7	586	12.3	67.1	.0	.0	.0	8.1	3.1	.0	.0	3.7	.0	.0	90.6	34
24-35 months	5.7	582	19.4	49.7	4.6	.0	.0	3.0	5.1	1.2	2.7	2.7	.0	.0	84.5	33
36-47 months	6.7	531	20.1	57.6	.0	.0	.0	2.5	.0	.0	.0	2.0	.0	.0	80.3	36
48-59 months	5.2	454	8.2	60.2	3.8	.0	.0	4.4	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	76.6	24
Educational Level of Caretaker/Mother																
No educ/Pre-sch	8.1	339	15.0	60.0	5.5	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	3.2	.0	.0	80.6	28
Primary	6.8	705	14.2	64.4	.0	.0	.0	.0	1.2	.9	.0	2.6	.0	.0	79.8	48
Secondary	4.8	1622	14.6	62.8	3.1	.0	.0	7.3	5.0	.0	1.2	1.6	.0	.0	92.9	78
Non-formal/Non-STD	2.2	35	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	1
DK/missing	.0	5	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	0
Total	5.7	2706	14.5	62.5	2.6	.0	.0	3.7	2.9	.3	.6	2.2	.0	.0	86.2	154

Table A. 22: Percentage distribution of children aged 6-59 months by whether they received a high dose Vitamin A supplement in the last 6 months, Botswana, 2007

District	Percent of children who received Vitamin A:					Total	Number of children aged 6-59 months
	<i>Within last 6 months</i>	<i>Prior to last 6 months</i>	<i>Not sure when</i>	<i>Not sure if received</i>	<i>Never received Vitamin A</i>		
Gaborone	14.3	39.0	2.8	13.0	30.8	100.0	166
Francistown	21.4	49.5	3.8	9.6	15.6	100.0	104
Lobatse	21.3	40.7	13.8	10.1	14.1	100.0	36
Selibe Phikwe	25.5	56.1	.7	4.8	12.9	100.0	68
Orapa	22.4	50.0	.0	6.7	20.9	100.0	7
Jwaneng	23.0	58.4	.0	4.3	14.3	100.0	25
Sowa	14.5	43.7	3.1	24.2	14.5	100.0	6
Southern	27.9	45.4	.8	14.9	11.0	100.0	206
Borolong	29.7	54.9	2.6	7.1	5.7	100.0	75
Ngwaketse West	23.0	38.8	4.0	21.3	12.9	100.0	15
South East	16.0	52.2	2.9	17.6	11.2	100.0	89
Kweneng East	16.9	46.5	6.3	10.6	19.7	100.0	299
Kweneng West	17.8	59.8	.0	10.6	11.9	100.0	61
Kgatleng	25.7	45.5	2.0	10.0	16.8	100.0	114
Serowe/Palapye	17.3	43.1	2.5	14.4	22.8	100.0	209
Central -Mahalapye	22.8	53.5	1.3	9.7	12.7	100.0	138
Central -Bobonong	19.3	54.7	.8	13.5	11.7	100.0	101
Central-Boteti	23.7	35.5	13.9	15.6	11.4	100.0	58
Central -Tutume	12.5	35.0	3.3	18.8	30.5	100.0	239
North East	22.1	45.6	2.8	5.0	24.5	100.0	72
Ngamiland East	8.7	35.7	10.6	22.6	22.3	100.0	135
Ngamiland West	4.8	14.4	.0	25.3	55.6	100.0	88
Chobe	1.5	34.6	.0	27.2	36.7	100.0	22
Ghanzi	22.3	36.9	6.5	17.1	17.2	100.0	46
Kgalagadi- South	28.6	51.5	4.8	2.3	12.8	100.0	40
Kgalagadi North	27.4	50.0	2.3	14.0	6.2	100.0	39
Total	18.8	44.2	3.6	13.6	19.8	100.0	2,461

Table A. 23: Percentage of households consuming adequately iodized salt, Botswana, 2007

District	Percent of households in which salt was tested	Number of households interviewed	Percent of households with salt test result			Number of households in which salt was tested or with no salt
			< 15 PPM	15+ PPM*	Total	
Gaborone	92.6	930	22.0	78.0	100.0	900
Francistown	81.3	439	26.2	73.8	100.0	373
Lobatse	81.4	165	29.9	70.1	100.0	145
Selibe Phikwe	91.4	221	27.3	72.7	100.0	211
Orapa	83.1	38	12.1	87.9	100.0	32
Jwaneng	98.2	79	27.1	72.9	100.0	79
Sowa	47.1	15	78.0	22.0	100.0	7
Southern	63.6	442	48.3	51.7	100.0	299
Borolong	43.4	182	66.1	33.9	100.0	85
Ngwaketse West	92.6	39	48.5	51.5	100.0	39
South East	77.2	269	22.1	77.9	100.0	217
Kweneng East	86.2	884	32.4	67.6	100.0	827
Kweneng West	24.0	150	66.8	33.2	100.0	46
Kgatleng	93.8	325	29.1	70.9	100.0	321
Serowe/Palapye	70.3	578	41.7	58.3	100.0	456
Central -Mahalapye	77.6	383	48.6	51.4	100.0	320
Central -Bobonong	90.2	269	52.3	47.7	100.0	255
Central-Boteti	65.0	162	34.9	65.1	100.0	124
Central -Tutume	57.8	457	50.4	49.6	100.0	283
North East	72.6	175	42.7	57.3	100.0	134
Ngamiland East	70.7	279	27.6	72.4	100.0	216
Ngamiland West	62.2	166	39.3	60.7	100.0	138
Chobe	70.5	78	47.8	52.2	100.0	59
Ghanzi	91.6	129	13.3	86.7	100.0	124
Kgalagadi- South	86.9	97	45.2	54.8	100.0	92
Kgalagadi North	73.2	79	51.5	48.5	100.0	75
Total	77.3	7,031	34.8	65.2	100.0	5,857

Table A. 24 : Percentage distribution of children aged 0-59 months by whether birth is registered, Botswana, 2007

	Birth is not registered because:											Total	Number of children aged 0-59 months without birth registration
	Birth is registered	Don't know if birth is registered	Number of children aged 0-59 months	Costs too much	Must travel too far	Didn't know child should be registered	Late, didn't want to pay fine	Doesn't know where to register	Will register later	Too lazy to register	Don't know		
U-Five Sex													
Male	71.8	6.5	1377	28.6	19.7	11.2	1.8	13.9	6.2	4.1	14.5	100.0	300
Female	72.7	6.3	1329	23.0	26.8	11.7	1.0	12.1	4.7	5.0	15.6	100.0	279
Place of residence													
City/Town	85.2	1.6	450	21.8	16.4	4.2	.0	23.6	9.6	13.3	11.0	100.0	60
Urban Village	73.7	6.0	885	22.5	16.7	13.0	3.1	15.4	7.5	6.1	15.7	100.0	179
Rural	66.9	8.2	1367	28.4	27.7	11.9	.8	10.0	3.7	2.2	15.4	100.0	340
Age													
0-11 months	76.0	1.9	550	17.3	35.4	8.0	.8	10.0	12.3	8.8	7.4	100.0	122
12-23 months	73.3	6.2	586	26.7	20.5	14.4	1.1	14.8	3.3	2.4	16.8	100.0	120
24-35 months	73.6	7.5	582	33.5	18.8	8.4	1.8	15.2	3.3	3.3	15.7	100.0	110
36-47 months	71.0	7.4	531	24.7	18.9	13.4	2.0	13.7	2.6	4.5	20.1	100.0	115
48-59 months	65.8	9.5	454	28.0	21.2	13.2	1.3	11.7	5.6	3.6	15.5	100.0	112
Educational Level of Caretaker/Mother													
No educ/Pre-school	54.2	16.3	339	17.4	24.5	18.3	.8	16.2	2.1	.0	20.7	100.0	100
Primary	66.5	8.3	705	31.3	22.3	11.4	1.6	11.5	4.2	4.3	13.3	100.0	178
Secondary	78.6	3.4	1622	25.3	22.9	8.8	1.5	13.4	7.7	6.1	14.4	100.0	292
Non-formal/Non-STD	71.1	8.5	35	38.2	40.8	.0	.0	.0	.0	10.9	10.1	100.0	7
DK/missing	35.1	18.2	5	.0	.0	100.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	.0	100.0	2
Total	72.2	6.4	2706	25.9	23.1	11.5	1.4	13.0	5.5	4.5	15.0	100.0	579

APPENDIX B: SURVEY METHODOLOGY

B.1 Objectives

The BFHS IV was designed to collect data that would provide information required for shedding light on, among others, the following:

- information on family planning awareness, approval and use.
- basic indicators on maternal and child health and other topic related to family health.
- To explore trends in fertility, mortality and examine factors influencing these basic demographic indicators.
- an- up-to date information for assessing the situation of children and women in Botswana.
- data needed for monitoring progress towards goals established at the World Summit for children and a basis for future action.

B.2 Target Population

The target population for the 2007 BFHS and MICS focused at three levels;

- i. For the reproductive behaviour, knowledge and use of contraception, breastfeeding and health the target population were individual males and females aged 12-49;
- ii. For the reproductive behaviour, knowledge and use of contraception, and health the target population were individual males aged 12-49;
- iii. For breastfeeding, immunization and general health segment the population covered children under - 5 (0-4 years).

B.3 Scope and Coverage

Only private dwellings were within the scope of the survey. Institutional dwellings (prisons, hospitals, army barracks, hotels, etc) and with completely industrial area were not within the scope of the survey.

The non-citizen tourists who were in Botswana on holidays and not working here were not included in the survey. Foreign tourists may, of course, be here as visitors to a selected household for the survey. In such cases they were treated as visitors, their names were recorded and the relevant questions were asked about them only at household level.

The 2007 BFHS was a nation-wide survey based on administrative district and sub-districts that are used by the Central Statistics Office.

B.4 Sampling Frame

The Sampling frame was defined and constituted by all *Enumeration Areas*² (EAs) found in three geographical regions viz. (i) Cities & Towns (ii) Urban Villages³ and (iii) Rural Districts as defined by the 2001 Population and Housing Census. The sampling frame for BFHS consisted of 4,114 EAs. During the 2001 Census, EAs were framed of manageable size (in terms of dwellings/households), so the primary sampling units (PSUs) were EAs. A list of occupied households in the selected EA served as a sampling frame for that EA, therefore the secondary sampling units (SSUs) were occupied households.

B.5 Stratification

Stratification was undertaken such that all districts and major urban centers become their own strata. With regard to increase precision consideration was also given to group EAs according to ecological zones (i) village, (ii) lands; (iii) cattle post (iv) freehold farms (v) mixture of land and cattle post in rural districts and according to income categories (i) high, (ii) medium, (iii) low, (iv) self help housing agency (SHHA); and (v) industrial in cities/towns. Geographical stratification along ecological zones and income categories was expected to improve the accuracy of survey data in view that homogeneity of the variables is relatively high. Strata 1-7 comprised of cities and towns; stratum 8 was a derived stratum of EAs of Urban Villages of rural districts (strata 9-27).

B.6 Sample Design

A stratified two-stage probability sample design was used for the selection of the sample (households). The first stage was the selection of EAs as Primary Sampling Units (PSUs) selected with probability proportional to measures of size (PPS), where measures of size (MOS) were the number of households in the EA as defined by the 2001 Population and Housing Census. In all 393 EAs were selected with probability proportional to size. At the second stage of sampling, the households were systematically selected from fresh list of occupied households prepared at the beginning of the survey's fieldwork (i.e. listing of households for the selected EAs). Overall 7,860 households were drawn systematically.

² **Enumeration Area (EA):** the smallest geographic unit, which represented an average work-load for an enumerator over a specified period (census period)

³ **Urban villages:** These are villages each with a 2001 Census population of 5,000 or more and at least 75 percent of its workforce engaged in non-subsistence agricultural economic activities. There are 27 urban villages distributed over the districts.

Steps in drawing a sample



B.7 Sample Size and Allocation of Sample (Households) to Strata

The size of the sample is the most important parameter of the sample design, because it affects the precision, the cost and duration of the survey more than any other factor. With the consideration of statistical determinants (margin of error of 5 percent and confidence level of 95 percent, design effect, household size etc.), the overall sample size for the 2007 BFHS was 7,860 households.

Remark: Two general rules of thumb govern the choice on numbers of PSUs (EAs) and SSUs (households): (i) the more PSUs, it is better, as both geographic representation, or spread, and overall reliability will be improved; and (ii) the smaller the number of SSUs, the more reliable estimates will be.

For BFHS the sample (households) was allocated to strata proportionally to the total number of household as per 2001 Census.

Remark: Complete rural district results will need the estimation of any urban small town or urban village component to add to the rural component.

Table1: Distribution of Households and EAs: 2007 BFHS

	Place of residence			Total
	Cities/Towns	Urban Villages	Rural	
Enumeration Areas in Sample,	112	120	161	393
Households in sample	2,240	2,400	3,220	7,860

Note: 20 Households per EA were selected.

B.8 Questionnaires and Coverage

The questionnaires are the primary recording documents of the survey. In the development of the questionnaires, CSO together with stakeholders revised the BFHS & MICS questionnaires. The MICS questionnaire was merged with the BFHS questionnaire to optimize resources since the two surveys have some modules which are similar. The male individual questionnaire was introduced for the 2007 BFHS and some new questions were added to different modules of the questionnaires. The final version of the questionnaires was finalized on the basis of the experiences gained from the pre-test conducted using the drafted questionnaires for the survey.

The 2007 BFHS consisted of four questionnaires, namely;

1. The Household Questionnaire
2. Individual Under- five (0-4 years) Questionnaire
3. Individual female (12-49 years) Questionnaire
4. Individual male (12-49 years) Questionnaire

B.8.1 The Household Questionnaire

The Household questionnaire was divided into nine major sets of questions, namely

- i. Socio-Demographic Characteristics
- ii. Parental Surviving & Fostering
- iii. Education and Social Characteristics
- iv. Employment Status and Other Economic Characteristics
- v. Fertility and child survival
- vi. Disability
- vii. Mortality
- viii. Housing characteristics
- ix. Home based Care
- x. Eligibility Criteria for being an individual questionnaire respondent

Criteria:

- i. Women aged 12-49 years who spent last night in the selected household were eligible for an individual questionnaire.
- ii. Mothers or primary caretakers of children aged less than 5 years.
- iii. Men aged 12-49 years who spent last night in the selected household were eligible for an individual questionnaire.

B.8.2 The Individual Under five (0-4 years) Questionnaire

The Individual Under five (0-4 years) Questionnaire was divided into the following nine modules;

- i. Background of a child
- ii. Ante and post natal care
- iii. Birth registration
- iv. Breastfeeding
- v. Postpartum amenorrhea
- vi. Immunization module
- vii. Vitamin A module
- viii. Care of illness module
- ix. Early learning module

B.8.3 The Individual women (12-49 years) Questionnaire

The Individual women (12-49 years) Questionnaire was divided into the following seven modules;

- i. Background information of the respondent
- ii. Marriage/union module
- iii. Fertility and child mortality
- iv. Maternal and new born health module
- v. Contraception
- vi. Fertility preference
- vii. Husband/partner 's background

B.8.4 The Individual men (12-49 years) Questionnaire

The Individual men (12-49 years) Questionnaire was divided into the following six modules;

- i. Background information of the respondent
- ii. Marriage/union module
- iii. Reproduction
- iv. Contraception
- v. Fertility preferences
- vi. Wife/partner 's background

B.9 Field work

B.9.1 Publicity for Public Awareness

Several methods were used to make Batswana aware of the BFHS;

- i) Communication of information about the survey to regional and district leader was made. Letters were written to all District Commissioners, District Officers, Paramount Chiefs, Town Clerks, and Council Secretaries in charge of the districts.
- ii) Botswana family Health Survey was also publicized through the radio announcement in both Setswana and English.
- iii) Some local newspapers were used to run adverts in the newspapers.
- iv) Public awareness about BFHS was done also through the Government Gazette dated 31st August 2007.

B.9.2 Pre-Test

The BFHS instruments (household, individual under five, individual male and female) were pre-tested in areas in and around Gaborone from 25th – 27th June 2007. Some changes were made after the pre-test and incorporated in the questionnaires. The pretest was useful since it provided valuable experience for the survey organizers about questionnaire design, training mechanisms, and fieldwork logistics. This experience was used to modify the survey instruments where necessary.

B.9.3 Training of field staff

A team of 11 officers trained BFHS staff and among the trainees 36 supervisors were trained over a period of six days from the 3rd – 8th, August 2007. The other group of trainees was one hundred and ninety five (195) enumerators trained over a period of two weeks (13th -30th August 2007). Of these 195 enumerators 170 were recruited, and some were designated for coding and editing duties. During the training, as a selection criterion, the trainees were subjected to a theoretical test followed by practical interviews involving real households. Translation of the questions into

Setswana was practiced during the training because most of the interviews were conducted in local language, Setswana.

B.9.4 Field work teams and data collection

There was a total of 204 field staff comprising 34 supervisors and 170 enumerators and all supervisors were CSO permanent staff. A total of 34 teams were engaged in the field work exercise and each team comprised 2 drivers, 5 enumerators, and a supervisor. At least 10 EAs were assigned to each team during the course of the survey. Data collection period was from the 1st September - 31st January 2008.

B.9.5 Quality Control

Quality control in the survey was ensured through effective supervision and monitoring of the interviewing teams during fieldwork. The supervisors were responsible for closely monitoring the work of the teams to ensure that all sampled households are visited, all eligible respondents are contacted, and that all questionnaires are edited in the field for accuracy and completeness. In order to ensure the quality of fieldwork, five senior staff from the CSO regularly visited the field to check on the performance of each team.

B.10 Data Management and Processing

B.10.1 Data coding, editing and data entry

The processing of Household and three Individual schedule data which included coding, editing and data entry was carried out by CSO. The questionnaires were manually edited to check for accuracy of responses and to ensure that codes assigned to the responses were in agreement with the designed codes. The design and installation of data entry, coding and editing program preceded the fieldwork. The structure of the questionnaire was developed to accommodate the use of the SPSS, SAS, or STATA statistical packages for ease of data entry. Data entry was done in CSPro statistical software and the program was designed such that it controlled data ranges and skips patterns, and included limited consistency checking. Trained data entry operators were engaged in the data entry process. Data editing included the checking of range, structure and internal consistency.

B.10.2 Weighting of the Sample

Once the data set was clean, sampling weights were applied to the data. Being a multistage design, it follows naturally that the sample selected at each stage represents (or is assumed to) the respective population. The fundamental assumption is that units selected at each stage were similar to those not selected, in respect of characteristics of interest. In the treatment of unit for the non-response the assumption that the respondents were similar to non-respondents though should not be always taken for granted.

Sampling weights are equal to the inverse of the probability of selection. Therefore the sampling probabilities at first stage of selection of EAs including probabilities of

selecting the households were used to calculate the design weights. The sampling weights were normalized to make them add up to the sample total. Non response adjustments were also taken into considerations at household and individual level to account for the units which did not respond.

B.10.3 Tabulation

Once all the data cleaning was complete and sampling weights applied to the data set, all tabulations needed for the BFHS report were produced and checked for consistency.

B.10.4 Limitations of the Survey Methodology

The 2007 BFHS is a household based survey and this is common for other surveys. Only private dwellings were within the scope of the survey whereas institutional dwellings (prisons, hospitals, army barracks, hotels, etc) as well as the homeless were not within the scope of the survey. The survey design allows for the analysis of national and sub-district level and other major sub-populations such as age, sex, however the sample size may not be adequate for the analysis of small domains.

APPENDIX C: SAMPLING ERROR

The estimates from a sample survey are affected by two types of errors: (1) non-sampling error, and (2) sampling errors. Non-sampling errors are the results of mistakes made in implementing data collection and data processing, such as failure to locate and interview the correct household, misunderstanding of the questions on the part of either the interviewer or the respondent, and data entry errors. Although numerous efforts were made during the implementation of the 2007 BFHS to minimize these type of errors, non-sampling errors are impossible to avoid and difficult to evaluate statistically.

Sampling errors, on the other hand, can be evaluated statistically. The sample of respondents selected in the 2007 BFHS is only one of many samples that could have been selected from the same population, using the same sample design and expected size. Each of these samples would yield results that differ somewhat from the results of the actual sample selected. Sampling errors are a measure of the variability between all possible samples. Although the degree of variability is not known exactly, it can be estimated from the survey results.

A sampling error is usually measured in terms of *standard error* for a particular statistic (mean, percentage, etc.), which is the square root of the variance. The standard error can be used to calculate confidence intervals within which the true value for the population can reasonably be assumed to fall. For example, for any given statistic calculated from a sample survey, the value of that statistic will fall within a range of plus or minus two times the standard error of that statistic in 95 percent of all possible samples of identical size and design.

The standard error can also be used to compute the design effect (DEFT) for each estimate, which is defined as the ratio between the standard error using the given sample design and the standard error that would result if a simple random sample had been used. A DEFT value of 1 indicates that the sample design is as efficient as simple random sample: a value greater than 1 indicates that increase in the sampling error is due to the use of more complex and less statistically efficient design.

If the sample of respondents had been selected as a simple random sample, it would have been possible to use straightforward formulae for calculating standard errors. However, the 2007 BFHS sample is the results of a stratified two stage design which is considered to be a complex design, hence special methods and soft wares are required to take into account the complexity of the design.

WesVar 4.3 statistical software (supported by WESTAT) was used to obtain standard errors, confidence intervals and design effect for selected indicators. It is a powerful tool for statistical data analysis from complex survey designs which includes multi-stage, stratification and unequal probability samples. Jackknife replication method was applied which forms part of the replication options within this software. To estimate variances using the jackknife method requires forming replications from the full sample by randomly eliminating one sample cluster (enumeration area) from a domain or stratum at a time. Then a pseudo-estimate is formed from the retained EAs,

which are re-weighted to compensate for the eliminated unit. Thus, for a particular stratum containing k clusters, k replicated estimates are formed by eliminating one of these, at a time, and increasing the weight of the remaining $(k - 1)$ clusters by a factor of $k / (k - 1)$. This process is repeated for each cluster.

For a given stratum or domain, the estimate of the variance of a statistic say t (t may be the mean, proportion, ratio e.t.c.) is given by:

$$\text{var}(t) = (se)^2 = \frac{1}{k(k-1)} \sum_{i=1}^k (t_i - t)^2$$

Where:

k is the number of clusters in the stratum or estimation domain,

t is the weighted estimate calculated from the entire sample of clusters in the stratum,

t_i is equal to $kt/(k-1) t_{(i)}$, where

$t_{(i)}$ is the re-weighted estimate calculated from the reduced sample of $k-1$ clusters.

To obtain an estimate of the variance at a higher level, say, at the national level, the process is repeated over all strata, with k redefined to refer to the total number of clusters (as opposed to the number in the stratum).

Sampling errors for selected variables for the country as a whole, are presented in Table. In addition to the value (R) of type of statistic (mean, proportion), standard error (SE) and value of design effect ($DEFT$) for each variable, the tables includes the number (N) of cases on which the statistic is based, the relative standard error (the standard error divided by the value of the statistic) and the 95 percent confidence limits ($R \pm 2SE$). The confidence limits may be interpreted by using the following example: the estimate of the proportion of women 12-49 years who have ever given a live birth at national level is 0.975 and its standard error is 0.003. To obtain the 95 percent confidence interval, twice the standard error is added to and subtracted from the estimate of the proportion of women aged 12-49 years who have ever given a live birth at national level, $0.975 \pm 2 * 0.003$. Thus, there is a 95 percent probability that the true value of the proportion of women aged 12-49 years who have ever given birth lies between 0.970 and 0.980.

TABLE: STANDARD ERRORS FOR SELECTED INDICATORS, BOTSWANA 2007

NATIONAL LEVEL							
	Value	Standard Error	Weighted*	Design Effect	Relative Error	Confidence Limits	
Indicators	(R)	(SE)	(N)	(DEFF)	(SE/R)	R - 2SE	R + 2SE
Women 12- 49 years							
Proportion who ever attended school	0.954	0.003	6916	1.701	0.346	0.947	0.960
Proportion who ever been pregnant	0.809	0.007	6916	1.494	0.820	0.796	0.822
Proportion who have ever given birth to a live child	0.975	0.003	6916	1.155	0.265	0.970	0.980
Proportion who have ever attended classes on sexual education(12-29)	0.875	0.008	6916	2.346	0.880	0.860	0.890
Mean age at first sex	17.8	0.179	6916	1.109	1.004	17.4	18.1
Mean age at first pregnancy	19.1	0.079	6916	1.520	0.414	19.0	19.3
Mean age at first birth	19.7	0.088	6916	1.460	0.448	19.6	19.9
Women with live births 2 years before interview							
Proportion of mothers who had tetanus injection	0.859	0.011	1397	1.381	1.279	0.837	0.880
Proportion of mothers who attended pre-natal care	0.960	0.006	1397	1.390	0.649	0.947	0.972
Men 12- 49 years							
Proportion who attended school	0.921	0.004	6102	1.602	0.474	0.913	0.930
Proportion who have ever attended classes on sexual education(12-29)	0.820	0.009	6102	2.224	1.103	0.802	0.837
Proportion who have biological child with women	0.551	0.009	6102	1.378	1.647	0.534	0.569
Mean age at first sex	18.0	0.150	6102	0.987	0.834	17.7	18.3
Children 0-4 years							
Proportion registered	0.720	0.013	2726	2.331	1.822	0.694	0.746
Proportion breast fed	0.764	0.010	2726	1.628	1.358	0.744	0.784
Proportion who had diarrhea (past 24 hours)	0.082	0.006	2726	1.380	7.540	0.070	0.095
Proportion who had cough (past 4weeks)	0.242	0.011	2726	1.860	4.635	0.220	0.264

* Weighted number is under normalized weight.

CITIES/TOWNS							
	Value	Standard Error	Weighted*	Design Effect	Relative Error	Confidence Limits	
Indicators	(R)	(SE)	(N)	(DEFF)	(SE/R)	R - 2SE	R + 2SE
Women 12- 49 years							
Proportion who ever attended school	0.987	0.003	1899	1.015	0.257	0.982	0.992
Proportion who ever been pregnant	0.746	0.014	1899	1.555	1.820	0.719	0.773
Proportion who have ever given birth to a live child	0.969	0.005	1899	1.035	0.528	0.959	0.979
Proportion who have ever attended classes on sexual education(12-29)	0.899	0.014	1899	2.551	1.510	0.873	0.926
Mean age at first sex	18.1	0.299	1899	1.045	1.652	17.5	18.7
Mean age at first pregnancy	19.6	0.156	1899	1.479	0.795	19.3	19.9
Mean age at first birth	20.2	0.144	1899	1.318	0.712	19.9	20.5
Women with live births 2 years before interview							
Proportion of mothers who had tetanus injection	0.848	0.025	315	1.594	2.885	0.800	0.896
Proportion of mothers who attended pre-natal care	0.964	0.016	315	2.651	1.705	0.931	0.996
Men 12- 49 years							
Proportion who attended school	0.963	0.005	1624	1.069	0.492	0.953	0.972
Proportion who have ever attended classes on sexual education(12-29)	0.871	0.017	1624	2.657	1.937	0.838	0.904
Proportion who have biological child with women	0.562	0.015	1624	1.230	2.689	0.532	0.591
Mean age at first sex	17.6	0.175	1624	1.239	0.995	17.3	18.0
Children 0-4 years							
Proportion registered	0.851	0.021	482	1.765	2.527	0.808	0.893
Proportion breast fed	0.784	0.025	482	1.836	3.223	0.735	0.834
Proportion who had diarrhea (past 24 hours)	0.081	0.013	482	1.044	15.634	0.056	0.106
Proportion who had cough (past 4weeks)	0.251	0.025	482	1.607	9.949	0.202	0.300

* Weighted number is under normalized weight.

URBAN VILLAGES							
	Value	Standard Error	Weighted*	Design Effect	Relative Error	Confidence Limits	
Indicators	(R)	(SE)	(N)	(DEFF)	(SE/R)	R - 2SE	R + 2SE
Women 12- 49 years							
Proportion who ever attended school	0.974	0.004	2474	1.246	0.372	0.967	0.981
Proportion who ever been pregnant	0.806	0.012	2474	1.560	1.433	0.783	0.829
Proportion who have ever given birth to a live child	0.975	0.004	2474	1.003	0.418	0.967	0.983
Proportion who have ever attended classes on sexual education(12-29)	0.900	0.013	2474	2.673	1.389	0.875	0.924
Mean age at first sex	17.5	0.176	2474	0.879	1.003	17.2	17.9
Mean age at first pregnancy	19.3	0.126	2474	1.408	0.653	19.0	19.5
Mean age at first birth	19.9	0.120	2474	1.333	0.604	19.7	20.1
Women with live births 2 years before interview							
Proportion of mothers who had tetanus injection	0.882	0.017	469	1.308	1.955	0.848	0.915
Proportion of mothers who attended pre-natal care	0.966	0.008	469	0.966	0.857	0.950	0.983
Men 12- 49 years							
Proportion who attended school	0.949	0.005	2008	1.076	0.540	0.939	0.959
Proportion who have ever attended classes on sexual education(12-29)	0.864	0.013	2008	1.906	1.489	0.839	0.889
Proportion who have biological child with women	0.522	0.017	2008	1.526	3.293	0.488	0.556
Mean age at first sex	18.5	0.358	2008	1.034	1.930	17.8	19.2
Children 0-4 years							
Proportion registered	0.733	0.020	874	1.818	2.737	0.693	0.772
Proportion breast fed	0.738	0.018	874	1.486	2.443	0.702	0.773
Proportion who had diarrhea (past 24 hours)	0.067	0.010	874	1.461	15.266	0.047	0.087
Proportion who had cough (past 4weeks)	0.217	0.017	874	1.507	7.882	0.183	0.251

* Weighted number is under normalized weight.

RURAL							
	Value	Standard Error	Weighted*	Design Effect	Relative Error	Confidence Limits	
Indicators	(R)	(SE)	(N)	(DEFF)	(SE/R)	R - 2SE	R + 2SE
Women 12- 49 years							
Proportion who ever attended school	0.909	0.008	2543	1.845	0.867	0.894	0.925
Proportion who ever been pregnant	0.860	0.010	2543	1.510	1.160	0.840	0.879
Proportion who have ever given birth to a live child	0.978	0.004	2543	1.438	0.446	0.970	0.987
Proportion who have ever attended classes on sexual education(12-29)	0.832	0.014	2543	1.988	1.624	0.806	0.859
Mean age at first sex	17.8	0.379	2543	1.176	2.129	17.1	18.6
Mean age at first pregnancy	18.6	0.126	2543	1.564	0.675	18.4	18.9
Mean age at first birth	19.3	0.168	2543	1.496	0.870	19.0	19.7
Women with live births 2 years before interview							
Proportion of mothers who had tetanus injection	0.847	0.017	613	1.354	2.045	0.813	0.881
Proportion of mothers who attended pre-natal care	0.953	0.010	613	1.172	1.000	0.934	0.971
Men 12- 49 years							
Proportion who attended school	0.871	0.010	2008	1.962	1.099	0.852	0.890
Proportion who have ever attended classes on sexual education(12-29)	0.752	0.016	2008	2.130	2.083	0.721	0.783
Proportion who have biological child with women	0.568	0.015	2008	1.378	2.631	0.538	0.597
Mean age at first sex	17.8	0.206	2008	0.775	1.159	17.4	18.2
Children 0-4 years							
Proportion registered	0.669	0.021	1346	2.629	3.096	0.628	0.710
Proportion breast fed	0.774	0.015	1346	1.646	1.882	0.746	0.803
Proportion who had diarrhea (past 24 hours)	0.093	0.009	1346	1.428	10.184	0.074	0.111
Proportion who had cough (past 4weeks)	0.256	0.017	1346	2.124	6.773	0.222	0.290

* Weighted number is under normalized weight.

APPENDIX D: LIST OF REFERENCE AND TWG MEMBERS

D1: LIST OF REFERENCE GROUP (RG) MEMBERS

No	Name	Organization	Email
1.	A. N. Majelantle	CSO	amajelantle@gov.bw
2.	M. P. Kerekang	CSO	mkerekang@gov.bw
3.	K. Mogotsinyana	CSO	kmogotsinyana@gov.bw
4.	K. Makhumalo	CSO	kmakhumalo@gov.bw
5.	P. Zambezi	CSO	gphetogo@gov.bw
6.	K. Johane	CSO	kjohane@gov.bw
7.	Dr. V. K. Dwivedi	CSO	vdwived@gov.bw
8.	V. Sebekedi	CSO	vsebekedi@gov.bw
9.	N. Nko	CSO	nnko@gov.bw
10.	M. Ramaretlwa	CSO	mramaretlwa@gov.bw
11.	P. Labobedi	CSO	plabobedi@gov.bw
12.	R. K. Chalashika	CSO	chalashika@hotmail.com
13.	K. Mbiganyi	CSO	kmbiganyi@gov.bw
14.	P. Mabote	CSO	smabote@gov.bw
15.	Susan Matroos	CSO	sumatroos@go
16.	D. Motlapele	CSO	dmotlapele@gov.bw
17.	M. Segotso	UNICEF	msegotso@unicef.org
18.	Dr Monkge	Vision 2016	monkge@bidpa.bw
19.	M.M Shatera	Min of Agriculture	mshatera@gov.bw
20.	F. Gomez	Ministry of Health	fgomez@gov.bw
21.	Marion Carter	BOTUSA	carterm@bw.cd.c.gov
22.	P. Campbell	F.D.P. Pop.&Dev	pcampbell@gov.bw
23.	P. Makhala	Dept Soc. Services, MLG	pmakhala@gov.bw
24.	Claire Moffat	AIDS STD unit	cmoffat@gov.bw
25.	M.V.Bowelo	MOH/UNFPA	mbowelo@gov.bw
26.	Molly Rammipi	Ministry of Health	mrammipi@gov.bw

D2: LIST OF TECHNICAL WORKING GROUP (TWG) MEMBERS

No	Name	Organization	Email
1.	A.N Majelantle	CSO	amajelantle@gov.bw
2.	M.P.Kerekang	CSO	mkerekang@gov.bw
3.	K. Makhumalo	CSO	kmakhumalo@gov.bw
4.	K. Johane	CSO	kjohane@gov.bw
5.	P. Zambezi	CSO	gphetogo@gov.bw
6.	Dr. V. K. Dwivedi	CSO	vdwived@gov.bw
7.	V. Sebekedi	CSO	vsebekedi@gov.bw
8.	N. Nko	CSO	nnko@gov.bw
9.	M. Ramaretlwa	CSO	mramaretlwa@gov.bw
10.	P Labobedi	CSO	plabobedi@gov.bw
11.	R. K. Chalashika	CSO	chalashika@hotmail.com
12.	K. Laetsang	CSO	klaetsang@gov.bw
13.	Susan Matroos	CSO	sumatroos@go
14.	D. Motlapele	CSO	dmotlapele@gov.bw
15.	K. Mbiganyi	CSO	kmbiganyi@gov.bw
16.	P. Mabote	CSO	smabote@gov.bw
17.	L. Tswiio	CSO	letswiio@gov.bw
18.	M. Raletsatsi	CSO	msraletsatsi@gov.bw
19.	Tebogo Missana	CSO	tmissana@gov.bw
20.	M. B. Modo	CSO	mbapindi@gov.bw
21.	B. Malemenyane	CSO	bletlhogela@gov.bw
22.	V. Makwati	CSO	vnmakwaty@gov.bw
23.	G. Mphetolang	CSO	gmphetolang@gov.bw
24.	B Komane	CSO	bukomane@gov.bw
25.	E. Onyadile	CSO	conyadile@gov.bw
26.	T. Mosiakgabo	CSO	tmosiakgabo@gov.bw
27.	P. Letsatsi	CSO	pletsatsi@gov.bw
28.	C. Danman	CSO	cdanman@gov.bw
29.	Sebego Ribase	CSO	sribase@gov.bw
30.	Tebogo Laletsang	CSO	tlaletsang@gov.bw
31.	Thapelo Sediadie	CSO	tsediadie@gov.bw
32.	Dr Monkge	Vision 2016	monkge@bidpa.bw
33.	M.M Shatera	Min of Agriculture	mshatera@gov.bw
34.	F. Gomez	Ministry of Health	fgomez@gov.bw
35.	Marion Carter	BOTUSA	carterm@bw.cd.c.gov
36.	P. Campbell	F.D.P. Pop.&Dev	pcampbell@gov.bw
37.	P. Makhala	Dept Soc. Services MLG	pmakhala@gov.bw
38.	Claire Moffat	Aids STD unit	cmoffat@gov.bw
39.	R.Kubanyi	IHS	rkubanyi@gov.bw
40.	Molly Rammipi	Ministry of Health	mrammipi@gov.bw
41.	M.V.Bowelo	Ministry of Health /UNFPA	mbowelo@gov.bw
42.	Dr M.Andeson	DHAPC/MOH	manderson@gov.bw
43.	K.Bainame	UB	bainamek@mopipi.ub.bw

No	Name	Organization	Email
44.	Ngome	UB	ngome@mopipi.ub.bw
45.	K.Setlhare	UB	setlhare@gov.bw
46.	M. Nkete	NACA	mnkete@gov.bw
47.	Dr Abebe Gobeze	Ministry of Health /DPH	abebeng@yahoo.com
48.	Jacinta Sibiya	Ministry of Health /FNU	sibiyajacinta@yahoo.co.uk
49.	Constance Formson	UNDP	constane.formson@undp.org
50.	Mareledi Segotso	UNICEF	msegotso@unicef.org
51.	David Kanje	UNICEF	dkanje@unicef.org
52.	Stephane Bodika	BOTUSA	bodikas@bw.cole.gov
53.	Brothers Malema	UB (Econ. Deptt.)	malemabw@mopipi.ub.bw
54.	Moses Keetile	UNFPA	keetile@unfpa.org
55.	Kgomotso Molosiwa	FDP/Div. Pop & Dev	kgmmolosiwa@gov.bw
56.	Kelebogile Motlhanka	Ministry of Health	gkmot989@yahoo.com

**APPENDIX E: QUESTIONNAIRES (Households/
Children/ Female/Male)**



Republic of Botswana

STRICTLY CONFIDENTIAL

MINISTRY OF FINANCE & DEVELOPMENT PLANNING

**2007 BOTSWANA FAMILY HEALTH SURVEY****HOUSEHOLD QUESTIONNAIRE***Collected under Statistics Act (Chap. 17:01)***GENERAL INFORMATION**

		IDENTIFICATION			
STRATUM NUMBER					
DISTRICT NAME /CODE					
VILLAGE NAME/CODE					
LOCALITY NAME/CODE					
EA NUMBER					
EA SERIAL NUMBER					
DWELLING NUMBER					
HOUSEHOLD NUMBER					
RESP'S NAME & LINE NO.					
NAME OF ENUMERATOR					
NAME OF SUPERVISOR					

		INTERVIEWER'S VISITS			INTERVIEW STATUS FINAL VISIT	
		1	2	3	INTERVIEWERS' CODE	
DATE						
NAME OF INTERVIEWER					*RESULT CODE	
STARTING TIME :						
FINISHING TIME:					TOTAL VISITS	
RESULTS*					TOTAL MALE ELIGIBLE	
NEXT VISIT	DATE				TOTAL FEMALE ELIGIBLE	
	TIME				TOTAL U-5 ELIGIBLE	

*RESULT CODE 1. COMPLETED 2. PRESENT BUT NOT AVAILABLE FOR INTERVIEWS 3. POSTPONED 4. REFUSED 5. PARTIALLY COMPLETED 6. OTHER _____ (SPECIFY)	TOTAL PERSONS IN HOUSEHOLD	
	NUMBER OF QUESTIONNAIRES USED	
	COMMENT BOX: 	

	CHECKED BY	CODED	ENTERED	ONLINE EDITED
NAME				
DATE				

IF FOUND PLEASE SEND TO: CENTRAL STATISTICS OFFICE, PRIVATE BAG 0024, GABORONE
OR NEAREST DISTRICT COMMISSIONER OFFICE

P BOTSWANA FAMILY HEALTH SURVEY 2007

Serial No.	ALL PERSONS			ALL PERSONS		PLACE OF BIRTH	
	NAME	RESIDENCE	RELATIONSHIP TO HEAD	SEX	AGE		
	<p>Please give me names of all persons who slept with this household last night. Make sure to include :</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Persons who were away last night on duty, prayer meetings, wake keeping, etc Babies, newly born, elderly, visitors and persons with disability who slept with this household <p>Please also give names of all persons who did not sleep here last night but usually live with this household and no other household</p> <p>Make sure to include:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Usual members hospitalised, in prisons, in boarding schools, hotels and outside the country. Babies, newly- born, and persons with disabilities. <p>(START WITH THE HEAD OF HOUSEHOLD)</p>	<p>Does usually live here?</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Yes - present Yes - absent Visitor 	<p>Did..... Spend the last night here?</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Yes Usual member Yes Visitor No 	<p>What is.....'s relationship to the head of the house-hold?</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Head Spouse/Partner Son/Daughter Child In-law Step child/ Foster/adopted Grandchild Parent Parent In-law Grand Parent Brother/Sister Nephew/Niece Uncle/Aunt Other relative Not related 	<p>Is..... male or female?</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Male Female 	<p>How old is.....in completed years?</p> <p>(Age as at last birthday. If under 1 enter 00 and if 98 or above enter 98)</p>	<p>Where was born? (USUAL PLACE OF RESIDENCE OF MOTHER BEFORE DELIVERY)</p> <p>(STATE DISTRICT VILLAGE AND LOCALITY IF BORN IN BOTSWANA) Otherwise state Country</p> <p>(IF AGE IS 1 YEAR AND OVER GO TO P10)</p>
P01	P02	P03	P04	P05	P06	P07	P08
01							
02							
03							
04							
05							
06							
07							
08							
09							
10							
11							
12							
13							
14							
15							

P BOTSWANA FAMILY HEALTH SURVEY 2007						
Serial No.	CHILDREN <1 PLACE OF DELIVERY	ALL PERSONS CITIZENSHIP	ALL PERSONS BELOW 18 YEARS			
			MOTHER		FATHER	
	Where was delivered (STATE DISTRICT VILLAGE AND LOCALITY) IF BORN IN BOTSWANA) Otherwise state country	What is the country of citizenship? 001 Botswana 002 Angola 003 Lesotho 004 Madagascar 005 Malawi 006 Mozambique 007 Namibia 008 South Africa 009 Swaziland 010 Zambia 011 Zimbabwe 012Tanzania 013 DRC 014 Mauritius 015 Seychelles Other - see list (IF AGE IS 18 AND OVER GO TO P15)	Is biological mother alive? 1. Yes 2. No (GO TO P13) 3. Don't know (GO TO P13)	Does biological mother usually live in this household? 1. Yes 2. No 3 Don't Know (IF NO GO TOP15)	Is biological father alive? 1. Yes 2. No (GO TO P15) 3 Don't Know (IF NO GO TOP15)	Does biological father usually live in this household? 1. Yes 2. No
P01	P09	P10	P11	P12	P13	P14
01						
02						
03						
04						
05						
06						
07						
08						
09						
10						
11						
12						
13						
14						
15						

P		BOTSWANA FAMILY HEALTH SURVEY 2007				
Serial No.		Serial No.	ALL PERSONS 2 YEARS AND OVER		PERSONS AGED 5-35	
			LANGUAGE	EDUCATION (FORMAL OR NON FORMAL)	YEARS	
			What language does.... Speak most often at home?	Has ....ever attended School ?	What is the highest level that has completed? Pre-school 00 01 02 03 09 30 Non standard curriculum Non Formal 60 61 62 63 64 65 69 Primary 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 19 Secondary 21 22 23 24 25 26 29 (IF AGE IS 36 & OVER GO TO P19) (IF P16 IS 1 OR 3 GO TO P19)	When did .....last attend school ? (State the year)
P01		P01	P15	P16	P17	P18
01		01				
02		02				
03		03				
04		04				
05		05				
06		06				
07		07				
08		08				
09		09				
10		10				
11		11				
12		12				
13		13				
14		14				
15		15				

P	BOTSWANA FAMILY HEALTH SURVEY 2007			
Serial No.				PERSONS AGED 12-35 YEARS
	ALL PERSONS 12 YEARS AND OVER			
	TRAINING			
	<p>Has ....ever had training of any type for at least 3 months?</p> <p>1. Still training</p> <p>2. Yes Completed</p> <p>3. Yes left not Completed training?</p> <p>4. No Training</p> <p>(If NO TRAINING GO TO P22)</p>	<p>Highest level obtained / to be obtained?</p> <p>31 Apprent. Certificate</p> <p>32 Brigades Certificate</p> <p>33 Vocational Certificate</p> <p>34 Educ.College Certificate</p> <p>35 University Certificate</p> <p>41 Vocational Diploma</p> <p>42 Educ. College Diploma</p> <p>43 University Diploma</p> <p>44 IHS Diploma</p> <p>45 Other Diploma</p> <p>51 University Degree</p> <p>52 Post graduate</p> <p>53 Other Degree</p>	<p>What is/was .....s subject of training?</p> <p>(If AGE IS 36 &OVER GO TO P22)</p> <p>(If P19 IS 1 GO TO P22)</p>	<p>When did Last attend training</p> <p>(State the year)</p>
P01	P19	P20	P20a	P21
01				
02				
03				
04				
05				
06				
07				
08				
09				
10				
11				
12				
13				
14				
15				

P		BOTSWANA FAMILY HEALTH SURVEY 2007				
Serial No.		Serial No.	ALL PERSONS AGED 12 YEARS & OVER			
			RELIGION	MARITAL STATUS	ECONOMIC ACTIVITY	
			What is... 's main religion?	What is 's current marital status?	What has been doing mainly in the past 12 Months?	Did... do any type of work for pay, profit or home use for at least 1 hour in the past 7 days?
			1 Christianity 2 Islam 3 Bahai 4 Hinduism 5 Badimo 6 No Religion Other (Specify)	1 Never Married 2 Married 3 Living Together 4 Separated 5 Divorced 6 Widowed	Seasonal work 01 Paid 02 Unpaid Non seasonal work 03 Paid 04 unpaid Other 05 Job Seeker 06 Home maker 07 Student 08 Retired 09 Sick Other (specify)	1 Yes (GO TO P27) 2 No [If no, has ... worked at lands/cattle Post?] (IF YES, ENTER 1 & GO TO P27)
P01		P01	P22	P23	P24	P25
01		01				
02		02				
03		03				
04		04				
05		05				
06		06				
07		07				
08		08				
09		09				
10		10				
11		11				
12		12				
13		13				
14		14				
15		15				

P BOTSWANA FAMILY HEALTH SURVEY 2007				
Serial No.	ALL PERSONS AGED 12 YEARS AND OVER			
	ECONOMIC ACTIVITY	OCCUPATION	INDUSTRY	
	Since ... was not working, what did he/she do? 1 Actively seeking work 2 Home maker 3 Student 4 Retired 5 Sick Other (specify) [IF FEMALE GO TO P30, IF MALE GO TO P38]	What was...working as during the past 7 days? 01 Employee paid in cash 02 Employee- paid in kind only 03 Self-employed (no employee) 04 Self-employed (with employees) 05 Unpaid family helper IN business 06 Working at own lands/cattleposts	What type of work did do in the past 7 days? (PROBE AS NECESSARY, USE TWO OR MORE WORDS TO DESCRIBE OCCUPATION)	What was the main product /service or activity of place of work? (PROBE AS NECESSARY, USE TWO OR MORE WORDS TO DESCRIBE INDUSTRY) (GO TO P38 FOR MALE)
P01	P26	P27	P28	P29
01				
02				
03				
04				
05				
06				
07				
08				
09				
10				
11				
12				
13				
14				
15				

P		BOTSWANA FAMILY HEALTH SURVEY 2007										
Serial No.		Serial No.	FEMALES AGED 12 YEARS AND OVER									
			FERTILITY AND CHILD SURVIVALS - FEMALES									
			Has..... ever given birth to a live child?	How many children have been born alive by.....? (including those who have died)	How many of these children are living with mother?	How many of these children are living elsewhere ?	How many of the children have died?					
					M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F
P01		P01	P30	P31	P32		P33		P34			
01		01										
02		02										
03		03										
04		04										
05		05										
06		06										
07		07										
08		08										
09		09										
10		10										
11		11										
12		12										
13		13										
14		14										
15		15										

P BOTSWANA FAMILY HEALTH SURVEY 2007								
Serial No.				ALL PERSONS				
	LAST LIVE BIRTH			DISABILITY				
	When did ... last give birth to a live child?	Was the last birth a boy or a girl? 1. Male 2. Female	Is the child still alive? 1. Yes 2. No	Does any one listed under column 2 have one of the following disabilities? 11 Defect of seeing in 1 eye 12 Defect of seeing in 2 eyes 13 Blindness in 1 eye 14 Blindness in 2 eyes 21 Defect of hearing in 1 ear 22 Defect of hearing in 2 ears 23 Deafness in 1 ear 24 Deafness in 2 ears 31 Defect of speech 32 Inability to speak 41 Inability to use 1 leg 42 Inability to use 2 legs 51 Inability to use 1 arm 52 Inability to use 2 arms 61 Mental retardation 71 Epilepsy 72 No disability				
P01	P35 MONTH YEAR		P36	P37	P38			
01								
02								
03								
04								
05								
06								
07								
08								
09								
10								
11								
12								
13								
14								
15								

P		BOTSWANA FAMILY HEALTH SURVEY 2007						
Serial No.		Serial No.	ALL PERSONS			ELIGIBILITY		
			HEALTH STATUS	HEALTH STATUS		Females 12-49	Children <5	Males 12-49
			Does any one listed under column 2 ever been diagnosed with one of the following diseases 01 High BP 02 Low BP 03 Diabetes 04 Cancer 05 Cardio-Vascular disease 06 Respiratory disease 07 Oestroporosis 08 Dental disease 09 None Other:..... (Specify)	Measure weight and record in kilograms (kg)	Measure height and record in centimeters(cm)	Circle line number of females eligible for individual interview. Female who spent last night here and are 12 to 49 yrs old	For each child age < 5 Who is the mother or primary caretaker of this child <i>Record line no. of this mother/ caretaker</i>	Circle line number of males eligible for individual interview. Male who spent last night here and are 12 to 49 years old
P01		P01	P39	P40	P41	E1	E2	E3
01		01				01		01
02		02				02		02
03		03				03		03
04		04				04		04
05		05				05		05
06		06				06		06
07		07				07		07
08		08				08		08
09		09				09		09
10		10				10		10
11		11				11		11
12		12				12		12
13		13				13		13
14		14				14		14
15		15				15		15

D		MORTALITY									
Serial No.		DEATHS OCCURRED DURING LAST 12 MONTHS									ELIGIBILITY
	Has any usual member of this household died in the past 12 months 1 Yes 2 No (IF NO GO TO D10)	Write name of the deceased (START WITH THE MOST RECENT)	Date of death		Was..... male or female 1 Male 2 Female	How old was... in completed years at the time of death? (Age as at last birthday. If under 1 enter 00 and if 98 or above enter 98)	What was ... place of usual residence (STATE DISTRICT VILLAGE AND LOCALITY) IF BORN IN BOTSWANA) Otherwise state country	What was the cause of death? 1. Illness 2. Transport related accident 3. Other accidents 4. Murder 5. Suicide 6. Maternal 7. Natural Disaster 8. Natural Death Other (Specify) IF 2 TO 7 & OTHER GO TO H01	If the deceased was sick, for how long had s/he been sick? STATE PERIOD IN MONTHS	Was there any burial in this household in the past 12 months (Enter number of persons buried during the period. If none Enter 00)	RECORD LINE NO. OF MOTHER OR CARETAKER (FROM P01) IF DECEASED WAS UNDER FIVE YEARS
			MONTH	YEAR							
D1	D2	D3	D4		D5	D6	D7	D8	D9	D10	E4
01											
02											
03											
04											
05											
06											
07											

H HOUSING CHARACTERISTICS							
TYPE OF HOUSING UNIT	TENURE OF HOUSING UNIT	NUMBER OF ROOMS	MATERIAL OF CONSTRUCTION OF THE MAIN HOUSE			SALT IODIZATION MODULE	
01 Traditional structure (Lolwapa)	How was this housing unit acquired?	How many rooms are there in this housing unit? (include: garages, kitchen etc. if also used for sleeping)	WALL	ROOF	FLOOR	Does this household use iodized salt for cooking ?	Test sample (REQUEST FOR SALT SAMPLE AND TEST IT)
02 Mixed structures	01 Self Built		01 Modern bricks/blocks	1 Slate	1. Cement		1. Not iodized (0 PPM)
03 Detached house	02 Inherited (Owner-occupied)		02 Mud bricks/blocks	2 Thatch/Straw	2. Mud/Mud and Dung		2. Less than 15 PPM
04 Semi- detached	03 Purchased (Owner-occupied)		03 Mud and poles/ cowdung/thatch/ reeds	3 Roof Tiles	3 Wood		3. 15 PPM or more
05 Town house/ Terraced	04 Rent: BHC		04 Poles and reeds /straw	4 Corrugated Iron/Zinc/Tin	4 Brick/stones		4. No salt in home
06 Flats, Apartment	05 Rent: Government		05 Corrugated Iron/Zinc/Tin	5 Asbestos	5 Tile	1. Yes	5. Salt not tested
07 Part of commercial building	06 Rent: Council		06 Asbestos	6 Concrete	Other (Specify)	2. No	
08 Movable	07 Rent: Individual		07 Wood	Other (Specify)		9. Don't Know	
09 Shack	08 Rent: Company		08 Stone				(CIRCLE NO. THAT CORRESPONDS TO THE TEST)
10 Rooms	09 Rent: VDC		Other (Specify)				
	10 Free						
	(Inc. Job related)						
	99 Don't know						
H01	H02	H03	H04	H05	H06	H07	H08

HOUSING CHARACTERISTICS

W A T E R S U P P L Y

DRINKING WATER			WATER FOR OTHER USE		
What is the principal source of drinking water supply for this household? 01 Piped indoors 02 Tap in yard 03 Communal tap 04 Bouser/ Tanker 05 Well 06 Borehole 07 River/Stream 08 Dam/Pan/lake 09 Rain water tank 10 Spring water 11 Bottled water from stores Other (Specify)	Do you treat your water in any way to make it safer to drink? 1 Yes 2 No 3 Don't Know (IF 2 OR 3 GO TO H12)	How do you treat the water ? 1. Boil 2. Add bleach /chlorine 3. Strain it through a cloth 4. Use water filter (ceramic, sand, composite) 5. Solar disinfection 6. Let it stand and settle Other..... (Specify)	What is the main source of water used by your household for other purposes such as cooking and washing? 01 Piped indoors 02 Piped outdoors 03 Communal tap 04 Bouser/ Tanker 05 Well 06 Borehole 07 River/Stream 08 Dam/Pan/lake 09 Rain water tank 10 Spring water Other (Specify) (IF 01 & 02 GO TO H15)	How long does it take to go there, get water, and come back? No. of minutes --- 995 On premises 999 Don't Know (IF 995 GO TO H15)	Who usually goes to this source to fetch the water for the household ? 1 Adult female 2 Adult male 3 Female child (<15) 4 Male child (< 15)
H09	H10	H11	H12	H13	H14

			HOUSING CHARACTERISTICS							
TOILET FACILITY			WHAT IS THE MAIN SOURCE OF ENERGY USED FOR						REFUSE DISPOSAL	
What is the main toilet facility used by this household?	Do you share this facility with other households ?	How many households in total use this toilet facility ?	COOKING				LIGHTING	HEATING (Space)	How does this household dispose off its refuse/rubbish?	How often is refuse/rubbish being collected?
Own 1. Flush toilet 2. Ventilated Improved Pit Latrine (VIP) 3. Pit Latrine 4. Enviro-loo Communal 5. Flush Toilet 6. VIP 7. Pit Latrine 8. Neighbours Toilet 9. None (IF 5 - 9 GO TO H18)	1 Yes 2 No (IF NO GO TO H18)	STATE THE NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS	01. Electricity 02. Gas (LPG) 03 Paraffin 04. Solar Power 05. Bio Gas 06. Wood 07. Cow-dung 08. Coal 09 Crop waste 10 Charcoal (Specify)	Where is the cooking done? 1. In the house 2. In a separate building 3. Out doors other (specify) (IF H18 IS 1-5 GO TO H22)	In this h/hold is food cooked on open fire or stove 1. Open fire (GO TO H22) 2. Stove Other _____ Specify..... (GO TO H 22)	Does the stove have a chimney? 1 Yes 2 No	1. Electricity 2. Gas (LPG) 3. Wood 4 Paraffin 5.Candle 6. Paraffin/candle 7. Solar Power 8. Bio Gas Other: _____ (Specify)	1. Electricity 2. Gas (LPG) 3. Wood 4 Paraffin 5. Solar Power 6. Cowdung 7. Charcoal 8. Coal 9. None Other: _____ (Specify)	1 Collected 2Burn 3 Roadside dumping 4 Rubbish pit 5 Other: (Specify) (IF 2 TO 5 GO TO H26)	1 Regularly collected 2 Irregularly collected
H15	H16		H17	H18	H19	H20	H21	H22	H23	H24	H25

DURABLES OWNERSHIP	HOME-BASED CARE	
Does any member of this household own a working..... in this housing unit) (CIRCLE ALL MENTIONED) 1 Van/Bakkie 2 Car 3 Tractor 4 Donkey Cart 5 Bicycle 6 Wheelbarrow 7 Radio 8 TV 9 Computer 10 Refrigerator 11 Watch 12 Cell Phone 13 BTC phone(land line) 14 Mokoro/canoe 15 Boat with motor 16 Sewing machine 17 Motor Bike 18 Plough	Is there any critically ill person in this housing unit? 1 Yes 2 No IF NO END INTERVIEW	Do nurse, social worker, etc visit any critically ill persons in this housing unit 1 Yes 2 No (CHECK FOR ELIGIBLE FEMALES, MALES AND CHILDREN UNDER FIVE YEARS FROM E1, E2, E3 & E4)
H26	H27	H28



Republic of Botswana

STRICTLY CONFIDENTIAL

MINISTRY OF FINANCE & DEVELOPMENT PLANNING

U5 - 02



2007 BOTSWANA FAMILY HEALTH SURVEY

UNDER FIVE (0 - 4 YEARS) QUESTIONNAIRE

Collected under Statistics Act (Chap. 17:01)

GENERAL INFORMATION

		IDENTIFICATION			
STRATUM NUMBER					
DISTRICT NAME /CODE					
VILLAGE NAME/CODE					
LOCALITY NAME/CODE					
EA NUMBER					
EA SERIAL NUMBER					
DWELLING NUMBER					
HOUSEHOLD NUMBER					
CHILD'S NAME & LINE NO.					
MOTHER'S NAME & LINE NO.					
NAME OF ENUMERATOR					
NAME OF SUPERVISOR					

	INTERVIEWER'S VISITS			INTERVIEW STATUS	
	1	2	3	FINAL VISIT	
DATE				INTERVIEWERS' CODE	
NAME				*RESULT CODE	
RESULTS*				TOTAL VISITS	
NEXT VISIT					
DATE					
TIME					

*RESULT CODE 1. COMPLETED 2. PRESENT BUT NOT AVAILABLE FOR INTERVIEWS 3. POSTPONED 4. REFUSED 5. PARTIALLY COMPLETED 6. OTHER _____ (SPECIFY)	COMMENT BOX:
---	---------------------

	CHECKED BY	CODED	ENTERED	ONLINE EDITED
NAME				
DATE				

IF FOUND PLEASE SEND TO: CENTRAL STATISTICS OFFICE, PRIVATE BAG 0024, GABORONE
OR NEAREST DISTRICT COMMISSIONER OFFICE

BACKGROUND OF A CHILD			
ENTER BELOW THE NAME, LINE NUMBER AND SURVIVAL STATUS OF EACH BIRTH SINCE SEPTEMBER 2002,			
QUESTIONS AND FILTERS		CODING CATEGORIES	
RECORD STARTING TIME IN 24 HOUR CLOCK		SKIP TO	
		HOUR-----	
		MINUTES-----	
101	Line Number of child from P1 or D1 of the Household questionnaire RE-ENTER THE NAME, AND SURVIVAL; STATUS OF EACH BIRTH SINCE SEPTEMBER 2002.	Line Number Name _____ ALIVE ----- 1 DEAD----- 2	
102	Is the respondent the mother or caretaker of?	MOTHER----- 1 CARETAKER----- 2	
103	Date of birth of? Age at last birthday/at death.	DAY MONTH YEAR If age >5 yrs end interview	
104	With whom is currently living (with whom was living?)	MOTHER----- 1 FATHER----- 2 MOTHER,S PARENTS----- 3 FATHER,S PARENTS----- 4 OTHER RELATIVES----- 5 OTHER _____ (SPECIFY)	
ANTE AND POST NATAL CARE			
105	When mother was pregnant with was she given any injection to prevent the baby from getting tetanus, that is convulsions (stiff jaw & stiff neck) after birth ?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 DON'T KNOW----- 9	
106a	When pregnant with, did you (she) consult anyone for a check up (Antenatal Care) on this pregnancy?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 DON'T KNOW----- 9	→ 107 → 107
106b	Whom did you (she) see ? (ANTENATAL CHECKUP)	HEALTH PROFESSIONAL: DOCTOR----- 1 NURSE/MIDWIFE----- 2 AUXILIARY NURSE----- 3 OTHER PERSON TRADITIONAL BIRTH ATTENDANT----- 4 TRADITIONAL DOCTOR----- 5 RELATIVE/FRIEND----- 6 OTHER _____ (SPECIFY)	
107	Who assisted with the delivery of.....? PROBE FOR THE TYPE OF PERSON AND RECORD THE MOST QUALIFIED.	HEALTH PROFESSIONAL: DOCTOR----- 1 NURSE/MIDWIFE----- 2 AUXILIARY NURSE----- 3 OTHER PERSON TRADITIONAL BIRTH ATTENDANT----- 4 TRADITIONAL DOCTOR----- 5 RELATIVE/FRIEND----- 6 OTHER _____ (SPECIFY)	
108a	After the birth of, did you (mother) see anyone for a Post Natal checkup?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 DON'T KNOW----- 9	→ 109 → 109

108b	Whom did you (mother) see for a check up ?	HEALTH PROFESSIONAL: DOCTOR----- 1 NURSE/MIDWIFE----- 2 AUXILIARY NURSE----- 3 OTHER PERSON TRADITIONAL BIRTH ATTENDANT----- 4 TRADITIONAL DOCTOR----- 5 RELATIVE/FRIEND----- 6 OTHER----- (SPECIFY)	
109	In the first week after delivery ,were you (was mother) visited in your (her) home by a health worker ?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 DON'T KNOW----- 9	
BIRTH REGISTRATION			
110a	Has .....s' birth been registered with the Civil Authorities ?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 DON'T KNOW----- 9	2 → 110c 9 → 110d
110b	Does/Did have a birth certificate ? MAY I SEE IT PLEASE ?	YES seen----- 1 YES, not seen----- 2 NO----- 3 DON'T KNOW----- 9	Then go to 110d
110c	Why is .....s' birth not registered ?	Costs too much----- 1 Must travel too far----- 2 Did not know it should be registered----- 3 Did not want to pay fine----- 4 Did not know where to register----- 5 DON'T KNOW----- 9 Other (Specify)-----	
110d	Do you know how to register a child's birth ?	Yes----- 1 No----- 2	
BREAST FEEDING			
111	Has ever been breastfed ?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 DON'T KNOW----- 9	1 → 113 9 → 116b
112	Why did you (mother) never breastfeed ?	INCOVENIENT----- 1 HAD TO WORK----- 2 INSUFFICIENT MILK----- 3 BABY REFUSED----- 4 CHILD SICK----- 5 MOTHER'S HEALTH CONDITION----- 6 CHILD DIED----- 7 OTHER----- (SPECIFY)	THEN GO TO 117A
113	How soon after birth did you (mother) give the breast ?	LESS THAN 1 HOUR----- 1 BETWEEN 1 AND 24 HOURS ----- 2 AFTER ONE DAY ----- 3 DON'T KNOW----- 9	
114	Is she/he still being breastfed ?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 CHILD DIED----- 3	1 → 117A
115	How many months did you (mother) breastfeed.....?	Months-----	

116a	Why did you stop breastfeeding	INCOVENIENT----- 1 HAD TO WORK----- 2 INSUFFICIENT MILK----- 3 BABY REFUSED----- 4 CHILD SICK----- 5 CHILD HAD DIARRHOEA----- 6 CHILD WEANING AGE----- 7 BECAME PREGNANT----- 8 MOTHER'S HEALTH CONDITION----- 9 CHILD DIED----- 10 OTHER----- (SPECIFY)																																																					
116b	Check 101: Child alive?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2	→ 118																																																				
117a	Since this time yesterday, did receive any of the following: Read each item aloud and record responses before proceeding to the next item	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Yes</th> <th>No</th> <th>DK</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>a) VIT ,MINERAL SUPPLEMENTS OR MEDICINE? -----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>b)PLAIN WATER-----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>c) SWEETENED WATER OR JUICE-----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>d) ORAL REHYDRATION SALT (ORS)-----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>e) INFANT FORMULA (0-6mnts)-----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>f) INFANT FORMULA (6-12 mnts)-----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>g) OTHER TINNED MILK -----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>h) POWDERED MILK-----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>i) FRESH MILK-----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>j) PASTURISED MILK (PINT)-----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>k) OTHER LIQUIDS -----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>l) SOLID OR SEMI SOLID FOOD-----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>9</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Yes	No	DK	a) VIT ,MINERAL SUPPLEMENTS OR MEDICINE? -----	1	2	9	b)PLAIN WATER-----	1	2	9	c) SWEETENED WATER OR JUICE-----	1	2	9	d) ORAL REHYDRATION SALT (ORS)-----	1	2	9	e) INFANT FORMULA (0-6mnts)-----	1	2	9	f) INFANT FORMULA (6-12 mnts)-----	1	2	9	g) OTHER TINNED MILK -----	1	2	9	h) POWDERED MILK-----	1	2	9	i) FRESH MILK-----	1	2	9	j) PASTURISED MILK (PINT)-----	1	2	9	k) OTHER LIQUIDS -----	1	2	9	l) SOLID OR SEMI SOLID FOOD-----	1	2	9	
	Yes	No	DK																																																				
a) VIT ,MINERAL SUPPLEMENTS OR MEDICINE? -----	1	2	9																																																				
b)PLAIN WATER-----	1	2	9																																																				
c) SWEETENED WATER OR JUICE-----	1	2	9																																																				
d) ORAL REHYDRATION SALT (ORS)-----	1	2	9																																																				
e) INFANT FORMULA (0-6mnts)-----	1	2	9																																																				
f) INFANT FORMULA (6-12 mnts)-----	1	2	9																																																				
g) OTHER TINNED MILK -----	1	2	9																																																				
h) POWDERED MILK-----	1	2	9																																																				
i) FRESH MILK-----	1	2	9																																																				
j) PASTURISED MILK (PINT)-----	1	2	9																																																				
k) OTHER LIQUIDS -----	1	2	9																																																				
l) SOLID OR SEMI SOLID FOOD-----	1	2	9																																																				
117b	CHECK 117A L: Child received solid or semi-solid (mushy) food?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2	→ 118																																																				
117c	After how long was solid or semi-solid (mushy) food introduced?	DAYS----- MONTHS----- DON'T KNOW----- 9 9																																																					
117d	SINCE THIS TIME YESTERDAY, HOW MANY TIMES DID EAT SOLID, SEMI SOLID OR SOFT FOODS OTHER THAN LIQUIDS IF 7 OR MORE TIMES, RECORD '7'	NO. OF TIMES----- DON'T KNOW----- 9																																																					
118	CHECK 102, IS THE RESPONDENT THE MOTHER TO?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2	→ 122																																																				
POSTPARTUM/ AMENORRHOEA																																																							
119	How many months after the birth of..... did your period return ?	MONTHS----- NOT RETURNED----- 96																																																					
120	Have you resumed sexual relations since the birth of?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2	→ 122																																																				
121	How many months after the birth of did you resume sexual relations ?	MONTHS-----																																																					
122	Do you have any under five health card for ? IF YES : May I see it, please ?	YES, SEEN----- 1 YES, NOT SEEN----- 2 NO CARD----- 3	→ 123																																																				

122a	Why is it not available?	CARD LOST----- 1 CARD BURNED----- 2 CARD SOMEWHERE ELSE----- 3 OTHER _____ (SPECIFY)																																																																	
123	Has ever had a vaccination to prevent him/her from getting diseases ?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 DON'T KNOW----- 9																																																																	
123a	CHECK 122 : Card seen ?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 → 126																																																																	
124	IMMUNAZATION MODULE. RECORD DATES OF IMMUNIZATIONS FROM UNDER FIVE CARD. BCG 1 DPT 1 DPT 2 DPT 3 POLIO 1 POLIO 2 POLIO 3 HB 1 HB 2 HB 3 MEASLES	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>YES</th> <th>NO</th> <th>DAY</th> <th>MONTH</th> <th>YEAR</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table>	YES	NO	DAY	MONTH	YEAR	1	2				1	2				1	2				1	2				1	2				1	2				1	2				1	2				1	2				1	2				1	2				1	2			
YES	NO	DAY	MONTH	YEAR																																																															
1	2																																																																		
1	2																																																																		
1	2																																																																		
1	2																																																																		
1	2																																																																		
1	2																																																																		
1	2																																																																		
1	2																																																																		
1	2																																																																		
1	2																																																																		
1	2																																																																		
1	2																																																																		
125	WRITE THE BIRTH WEIGHT FROM CARD	WEIGHT (in kg)-----																																																																	
	VITAMIN A MODULE																																																																		
126	Has ever received a vitamin A capsule (Supplement) Like this one? SHOW CAPSULE OR DISPENSER FOR DIFFERENT DOSES. 100,000 IU FOR THOSE 6-11 MONTHS OLD 200,000 IU FOR THOSE 12-59 MONTHS OLD	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 CHILD NOT ELIGIBLE----- 3 → 129 DON'T KNOW----- 9																																																																	
126a	CHECK 101: CHILD ALIVE	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 → 128																																																																	
127	How many months ago did take the last dose?	MONTHS AGO-----																																																																	
128	Where did get the last dose?	ON ROUTINE VISIT TO HEALTH FACILITY----- 1 SICK CHILD VISIT TO HEALTH FACILITY----- 2 NATIONAL IMMUNISATION DAY CAMPAIGNS-- 3 DON'T KNOW----- 9 OTHER (specify) _____																																																																	

**IF CHILD DEAD
END INTERVIEW**

CARE OF ILLNESS MODULE															
129	Hashad diarrhoea in the last 24 hours ? (DIARRHOEA IS DETERMINED AS PERCEIVED BY MOTHER OR CARETAKER, AS 3 OR MORE LOOSE OR WATERY STOOLS PER DAY, OR BLOOD IN STOOL).	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 DON'T KNOW----- 9	→ 131												
130	Has had diarrhoea in last two weeks ?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 DON'T KNOW----- 9	→ 132 → 143 → 143												
131	How many times did pass stools?	Number of stools <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>													
132	The last timepassed stools,what was done to dispose of the stools ?	CHILD USED TOILET /LATRINE----- 1 PUT /RINSED INTO TOILET OR LATRINE----- 2 PUT /RINSED INTO DRAIN OR DITCH----- 3 THROWN INTO GARBAGE (SOLID WASTE)--- 4 BURIED----- 5 LEFT IN THE OPEN ----- 6 DON'T KNOW----- 9 OTHER (SPECIFY)_____													
133	How many days ago did the last diarrhoea start?	DAYS----- <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> DON'T KNOW----- 99													
134	LOOK AT 114: IS CHILD STILL BREASTFED ?	YES----- 1 NO ----- 2	→ 136												
135	Did you continue breastfeeding when he/she had diarrhoea ?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2													
136	When had diarrhoea ,was he/she given more ,less or the same amount of fluids to drink as given before the diarrhoea ?	MORE----- 1 LESS----- 2 SAME----- 3 DON'T KNOW----- 9													
137	When had diarrhoea, was she/he given more,less or the same amount of solid food as given before he/she had diarrhoea ?	MORE----- 1 LESS----- 2 SAME----- 3 SOLID FOODS NOT YET GIVEN----- 4 DON'T KNOW----- 9 OTHER _____ (SPECIFY)													
138	During the last episode of the diarrhoea was given any of the following? READ EACH ITEM ALOUD AND RECORD RESPONSE BEFORE PROCEEDING TO THE NEXT ITEM.	<table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Yes</th> <th>No</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>HOME SOLUTION OF SALT ,SUGAR</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>WATER-----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ORS PACKET SOLUTION-----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Yes	No	HOME SOLUTION OF SALT ,SUGAR			WATER-----	1	2	ORS PACKET SOLUTION-----	1	2	IF NO TO BOTH GO TO 141a
	Yes	No													
HOME SOLUTION OF SALT ,SUGAR															
WATER-----	1	2													
ORS PACKET SOLUTION-----	1	2													

139	How much of the home solutions /special packet (ORS) was given every 24 hours ?	$\frac{1}{2}$ LITER----- 1 1 LITER----- 2 $1\frac{1}{2}$ LITER----- 3 2 LITER----- 4 DON'T KNOW----- 9 OTHER _____ (SPECIFY)																						
140	For how many days was given home solutions/ special packet (ORS) ?	DAYS ----- <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> DON'T KNOW----- 99																						
141a	Was treated anywhere during the last episode of diarrhoea ?	YES----- 1 NO ----- 2	→ 143																					
141b	Where was he/she taken (the last time) ?	HEALTH POST----- 1 CLINIC----- 2 HOSPITAL/ HEALTH CENTRE----- 3 PRIVATE DOCTOR /CLINIC----- 4 TRADITIONAL DOCTOR----- 5 DON'T KNOW----- 9 OTHER _____ (SPECIFY)																						
142	Was any of the following given to..... to treat the diarrhoea (the last time) ?	<table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>YES</th> <th>NO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INJECTION-----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>INTRAVENOUS(DRIP)-----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TABLETS OR PILLS-----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SYRUPS -----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ORS -----</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OTHER (SPECIFY)_____</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		YES	NO	INJECTION-----	1	2	INTRAVENOUS(DRIP)-----	1	2	TABLETS OR PILLS-----	1	2	SYRUPS -----	1	2	ORS -----	1	2	OTHER (SPECIFY)_____			
	YES	NO																						
INJECTION-----	1	2																						
INTRAVENOUS(DRIP)-----	1	2																						
TABLETS OR PILLS-----	1	2																						
SYRUPS -----	1	2																						
ORS -----	1	2																						
OTHER (SPECIFY)_____																								
READ OUT RESPONSES																								
143	Has suffered from severe cough (different or rapid breathing) in the last four weeks ?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 DON'T KNOW----- 9	→ 148 → 148																					
144	Whenhad illness with a cough ,did he/she breathe faster than usual with short, quick breaths or have difficulty in breathing ?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 DON'T KNOW----- 9	→ 148 → 148																					
145	Were the symptoms due to a problem in the chest or a blocked nose ?	PROBLEM IN CHEST----- 1 BLOCKED NOSE----- 2 BOTH----- 3 DON'T KNOW----- 9 OTHER (specify)_____																						

146	Where was taken for the treatment of the problem ? CIRCLE ALL MENTIONED BUT DO NOT PROMPT WITH ANY SUGGESTIONS.	PUBLIC SECTOR Govt. Hospital----- 1 Govt. clinic----- 2 Govt. Health post----- 3 Family Welfare Educator----- 4 Mobile /outreach clinic----- 5 PRIVATE MEDICAL SECTOR Private hospital/clinic----- 6 Private doctor----- 7 Private pharmacy----- 8 Mobile clinic----- 9 OTHER SOURCE Relative or friend----- 10 Shop----- 11 Traditional practitioner----- 12 Other (Specify) _____	
147	Was any of the following given to..... to treat the problem ? READ OUT RESPONSES	YES NO ANTIBIOTICS----- 1 2 PANADO,PARACETAMOL SYRUP/ TABLETS----- 1 2 ASPRIN----- 1 2 INJECTION----- 1 2 OTHER _____ (SPECIFY) _____	
148	Has suffered from ear pain or ear discharge (pus draining from the ear) in the last four weeks ?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 DON'T KNOW----- 9	 → 150 → 150
149	Was..... taken anywhere to treat the problem ? IF YES: Where was he/she taken? CIRCLE ALL MENTIONED	HEALTH POST----- 1 CLINIC----- 2 HOSPITAL/ HEALTH CENTRE----- 3 PRIVATE DOCTOR /CLINIC----- 4 TRADITIONAL DOCTOR----- 5 CHILD NOT TAKEN----- 6 DON'T KNOW----- 9 OTHER _____ (SPECIFY) _____	
150	Has suffered from common cold (flu) in the last four weeks ?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 DON'T KNOW ----- 9	 → 153 → 153
151	Was taken anywhere to treat the problem ? IF YES: Where was he/she taken? CIRCLE ALL MENTIONED	HEALTH POST----- 1 CLINIC----- 2 HOSPITAL/ HEALTH CENTRE----- 3 PRIVATE DOCTOR /CLINIC----- 4 TRADITIONAL DOCTOR----- 5 CHILD NOT TAKEN----- 6 DON'T KNOW----- 9 OTHER _____ (SPECIFY) _____	
152	Was any of the following given to..... to treat the problem ? READ OUT RESPONSES	YES NO ANTIBIOTICS----- 1 2 PANADO,PARACETAMOL SYRUP/ TABLETS----- 1 2 COUGH SYRUP----- 1 2 INJECTION----- 1 2 OTHER _____ (SPECIFY) _____	

153	Has had fever in the last four weeks ?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2 DON'T ----- 9	156 156
154	Was taken anywhere to treat the fever ? IF YES : Where was he /she taken ? CIRCLE ALL MENTIONED READ OUT RESPONSES	HEALTH POST----- 1 CLINIC----- 2 HOSPITAL/ HEALTH CENTRE----- 3 PRIVATE DOCTOR /CLINIC----- 4 TRADITIONAL DOCTOR----- 5 CHILD NOT TAKEN----- 6 DON'T KNOW----- 9 OTHER----- (SPECIFY)	
155	Was any of the following given to..... to treat the problem ? READ OUT RESPONSES	YES NO ANTIBIOTICS----- 1 2 PANADO, PARACETAMOL SYRUP/ TABLETS--- 1 2 COUGH SYRUP----- 1 2 INJECTION----- 1 2 OTHER----- (SPECIFY)	
156	Sometimes children have severe illness and should be taken immediately to a health facility. Which types of symptoms will cause you to take your child to a health facility right away? KEEP ASKING FOR MORE SIGNS OR SYMPTOMS UNTIL THE CARETAKER CANNOT RECALL ANY ADDITIONALSYMPTOMS. CIRCLE ALL SYPTOMS MENTIONED, BUT DO NOT PROMPT WITH ANY SUGGESTIONS	Child not able to drink or breastfeed----- 1 Child becomes sicker----- 2 Child develops a fever----- 3 Child has fast breathing----- 4 Child has difficulty in breathing----- 5 Child has blood in stool----- 6 Child is drinking poorly----- 7 Other (Specify)-----	
157	Is currently receiving TSABANA from the clinic /hospital ?	YES----- 1 NO----- 2	159
158	IF NO, Why did not receive TSABANA ?	NEVER HEARD OF IT ----- 1 CHILD NOT TAKEN TO CLINIC----- 2 CHILD NOT ELIGIBLE----- 3 MOTHER UNINTERESTED----- 4 NOT AVAILABLE ----- 5 MOTHER WANT PHALET SHE----- 6 OTHER----- (SPECIFY)	ALL GO TO 162
159	How often does eat TSABANA ?	MORE THAN 2 TIMES A DAY----- 1 1-2 TIMES A DAY ----- 2 LESS THAN 3 TIMES A WEEK----- 3 NEVER ----- 4 OTHER----- (SPECIFY)	161
160	When did you last give Tsabana ? IF LESS THAN AN HOUR ENTER 00 FOR HOURS	NUMBER OF: Hours----- Days----- Weeks----- Months----- Years-----	

161	ASK FOR A SAMPLE OF TSABANA AND RECORD	SAMPLE SEEN ----- 1 SAMPLE NOT SEEN----- 2																																																		
EARLY LEARNING MODULE																																																				
162	CHECK AGE OF CHILD IN 103. CHILD IS 2 - 4 YEARS OLD?	YES ----- 1 NO----- 2 → 165																																																		
163a	Does attend any organized learning or early childhood education programme, such as private or government facility, including kindergarden or community child care ?	YES ----- 1 NO----- 2 → 164 DON'T KNOW----- 9 → 164																																																		
163b	Within the last seven days, about how many hours did attend ?	NO. OF HOURS----- <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																																																		
164	In the past 3 days, did you or any Household member over 15 years of age engage in any of the following activities with; If yes ask: Who engaged in this activity with the child the mother the child's father or another adult member of the household (including the caretaker/respondent)? Circle all that apply. a. Read books or look at picture books with? b. Tell stories to c. Sings songs with ? d. Take .. outside the home, compound, yard e. Play with f. Spend time with naming counting , and/or drawing thing	<table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>MOTHER</th> <th>FATHER</th> <th>CARETAKER</th> <th>SIBLINGS</th> <th>OTHER</th> <th>NONE</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Books</td> <td>A</td> <td>B</td> <td>C</td> <td>D</td> <td>X</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Stories</td> <td>A</td> <td>B</td> <td>C</td> <td>D</td> <td>X</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Songs</td> <td>A</td> <td>B</td> <td>C</td> <td>D</td> <td>X</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Take outside</td> <td>A</td> <td>B</td> <td>C</td> <td>D</td> <td>X</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Play with</td> <td>A</td> <td>B</td> <td>C</td> <td>D</td> <td>X</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Spend time</td> <td>A</td> <td>B</td> <td>C</td> <td>D</td> <td>X</td> <td>Y</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		MOTHER	FATHER	CARETAKER	SIBLINGS	OTHER	NONE	Books	A	B	C	D	X	Y	Stories	A	B	C	D	X	Y	Songs	A	B	C	D	X	Y	Take outside	A	B	C	D	X	Y	Play with	A	B	C	D	X	Y	Spend time	A	B	C	D	X	Y	
	MOTHER	FATHER	CARETAKER	SIBLINGS	OTHER	NONE																																														
Books	A	B	C	D	X	Y																																														
Stories	A	B	C	D	X	Y																																														
Songs	A	B	C	D	X	Y																																														
Take outside	A	B	C	D	X	Y																																														
Play with	A	B	C	D	X	Y																																														
Spend time	A	B	C	D	X	Y																																														
AFTER QUESTIONNAIRES FOR ALL CHILDREN ARE COMPLETE, THE ENUMERATOR WEIGHS AND MEASURES EACH CHILD RECORD WEIGHT AND LENGTH/HEIGHT BELOW, TAKING CARE TO RECORD THE MEASUREMENTS ON THE CORRECT QUESTIONNAIRE FOR EACH CHILD. CHECK THE CHILD'S NAME AND LINE NUMBER ON THE HOUSEHOLD LISTING BEFORE RECORDING MEASUREMENTS.																																																				
165	a) MEASURE THE WEIGHT AND RECORD FOR CHILD. b) MEASURE THE HEAD CIRCUMFERENCE AND RECORD FOR CHILD. c) MEASURE THE HEIGHT AND RECORD FOR CHILD. IF CHILD IS UNDER 2 YEARS OLD → MEASURE LENGTH (LYING DOWN) IF CHILD IS 2 OR MORE YEARS → MEASURE HEIGHT (STANDING UP)	Weight (in kg)----- Circumference (in cm)----- Length (in cm)----- Height (in cm)-----																																																		
166	Result of measurement	MEASURED----- 1 NOT PRESENT----- 2 REFUSED----- 3 Other _____ Specify																																																		
RECORD THE TIME AT THE END OF INTERVIEW		HOUR ----- MINUTES -----	END INTERVIEW <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																																																	



Republic of Botswana

STRICTLY CONFIDENTIAL

MINISTRY OF FINANCE & DEVELOPMENT PLANNING

WM - 03



2007 BOTSWANA FAMILY HEALTH SURVEY

INDIVIDUAL FEMALE (12 - 49 YEARS) QUESTIONNAIRE

Collected under Statistics Act (Chap. 17:01)

GENERAL INFORMATION

		IDENTIFICATION			
STRATUM NUMBER					
DISTRICT NAME /CODE					
VILLAGE NAME/CODE					
LOCALITY NAME/CODE					
EA NUMBER					
EA SERIAL NUMBER					
DWELLING NUMBER					
HOUSEHOLD NUMBER					
NAME & LINE NO. OF WOMAN					
NAME OF ENUMERATOR					
NAME OF SUPERVISOR					

	INTERVIEWER'S VISITS			INTERVIEW STATUS FINAL VISIT	
	1	2	3	INTERVIEWERS' CODE	
DATE		7		*RESULT CODE	
NAME				TOTAL VISITS	
RESULTS*					
NEXT VISIT					
DATE TIME					

*RESULT CODE 1. COMPLETED 2. PRESENT BUT NOT AVAILABLE FOR INTERVIEWS 3. POSTPONED 4. REFUSED 5. PARTIALLY COMPLETED 6. OTHER _____ (SPECIFY)	COMMENTS BOX
---	---------------------

	CHECKED BY	CODED	ENTERED	ONLINE EDITED
NAME				
DATE				

IF FOUND PLEASE SEND TO: CENTRAL STATISTICS OFFICE, PRIVATE BAG 0024, GABORONE
OR NEAREST DISTRICT COMMISSIONER OFFICE

<p>Repeat greeting if not already read to this woman: We are from (CENTRAL STATISTICS OFFICE) . We are working on a project concerned with family health and education. We would like to talk to you about this. The interview will take about (.....) minutes. All the information we obtain will remain strictly confidential and your answers will never be identified. May I start now? If the woman does not agree to continue, thank her, and go to the next interview. Discuss this result with your supervisor for revisit.</p>																																	
SECTION 1: RESPONDENT'S BACKGROUND (FEMALES 12-49 YEARS)																																	
	RECORD THE STARTING TIME OF INTERVIEW IN 24 HOUR CLOCK	Hour..... Minutes.....																															
101	In what month and year were you born?	Month..... Year.....																															
102	How old are you in completed years? RECONCILE WITH P07 FROM HOUSEHOLD QUESTIONNAIRE	Age (in completed years)																															
103	Have you ever attended school ?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2	>105																														
104	What is the highest level of school you attended?	Primary..... 1 Secondary..... 2 Higher..... 3 Non-formal..... 4 Non-standard curriculum..... 5																															
105	Do you listen to a Radio at least once a week?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2	>108																														
106	Do you often listen to:	<table border="0"> <tr> <td></td> <td>Yes</td> <td>No</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Radio Botswana (RB1).....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Radio Botswana (RB2).....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Yarona FM.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Gabz FM.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other..... (Specify)</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>		Yes	No	Radio Botswana (RB1).....	1	2	Radio Botswana (RB2).....	1	2	Yarona FM.....	1	2	Gabz FM.....	1	2	Other..... (Specify)															
	Yes	No																															
Radio Botswana (RB1).....	1	2																															
Radio Botswana (RB2).....	1	2																															
Yarona FM.....	1	2																															
Gabz FM.....	1	2																															
Other..... (Specify)																																	
107	Do you often listen to the following Programmes:	<table border="0"> <tr> <td></td> <td>Yes</td> <td>No</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Masa- a- Sele.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Maokaneng.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Tsa Boitekanelo.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Makgabaneng.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dikgang.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dikgang tsa Palamente.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other..... (Specify)</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>		Yes	No	Masa- a- Sele.....	1	2	Maokaneng.....	1	2	Tsa Boitekanelo.....	1	2	Makgabaneng.....	1	2	Dikgang.....	1	2	Dikgang tsa Palamente.....	1	2	Other..... (Specify)									
	Yes	No																															
Masa- a- Sele.....	1	2																															
Maokaneng.....	1	2																															
Tsa Boitekanelo.....	1	2																															
Makgabaneng.....	1	2																															
Dikgang.....	1	2																															
Dikgang tsa Palamente.....	1	2																															
Other..... (Specify)																																	
108	Do you watch Television at least once a week?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2	>111																														
109	Do you often watch:	<table border="0"> <tr> <td></td> <td>Yes</td> <td>No</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Botswana Television (BTV).....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Gaborone Broadcasting Corporation (GBC)---</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other..... (Specify)</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>		Yes	No	Botswana Television (BTV).....	1	2	Gaborone Broadcasting Corporation (GBC)---	1	2	Other..... (Specify)																					
	Yes	No																															
Botswana Television (BTV).....	1	2																															
Gaborone Broadcasting Corporation (GBC)---	1	2																															
Other..... (Specify)																																	
110	Do you often watch the following Programmes:	<table border="0"> <tr> <td></td> <td>Yes</td> <td>No</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Talk Back.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>The Eye.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>News Bulletin.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Matlho a Phage.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Sedibeng.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Silent Shout.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Religious Programmes.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Tshamekang (sports).....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other..... (Specify)</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>		Yes	No	Talk Back.....	1	2	The Eye.....	1	2	News Bulletin.....	1	2	Matlho a Phage.....	1	2	Sedibeng.....	1	2	Silent Shout.....	1	2	Religious Programmes.....	1	2	Tshamekang (sports).....	1	2	Other..... (Specify)			
	Yes	No																															
Talk Back.....	1	2																															
The Eye.....	1	2																															
News Bulletin.....	1	2																															
Matlho a Phage.....	1	2																															
Sedibeng.....	1	2																															
Silent Shout.....	1	2																															
Religious Programmes.....	1	2																															
Tshamekang (sports).....	1	2																															
Other..... (Specify)																																	

MARRIAGE / UNION MODULE																																																
111	What is your current marital status?	Married..... 1 Living together..... 2 Separated..... 3 Divorced..... 4 Widowed..... 5 Never married..... 6	-----> 115 -----> 117																																													
112	How old is your husband/partner in completed years?	Age (in completed years)..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																																														
113	Does your husband/ partner live with you or live elsewhere now?	Living with me..... 1 Living elsewhere..... 2 Never stayed together..... 3	-----> 115 -----> 115																																													
114	How long has he been away? ENTER BOTH MONTHS AND YEARS	Months..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Years..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																																														
115	In what month and year did you <u>first</u> marry or start living together?	Month..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Year..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																																														
116	How old were you then?	Age (in completed years)..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	> 118																																													
117	Have you ever lived together with a partner?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2	----->119																																													
118	Have you been in a relationship with one husband/ partner in the past five years?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2	----->119																																													
118a	How many husbands/ partners including the current husband/ partner have you lived with?	<input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																																														
FEMALES 12 - 29 YEARS																																																
119	LOOK AT 102, CIRCLE AND ENTER THE CODE: AGE 29 YEARS AND BELOW?	Yes..... 1 <input type="text"/> No..... 2 <input type="text"/>	----->201																																													
120	Have you ever attended classes on sexual education?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2	-----> 123																																													
121	Which topics did they talk about in these classes? (READ THE ALTERNATIVES AND MARK THOSE MENTIONED BY RESPONDENT)	<table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Yes</th> <th>No</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>a. Physical changes.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>b. Reproductive feminine organs.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>c. Reproductive masculine organs.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>d. Menstruation or Period.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>e. Pregnancy.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>f. Delivery.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>g. Sex.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>h. STIs.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>i. Contraceptive methods.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>j. AIDS.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>k. Homosexuality.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>l. Prostitution.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>m. Lactation.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Other..... (Specify)</td><td></td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table>		Yes	No	a. Physical changes.....	1	2	b. Reproductive feminine organs.....	1	2	c. Reproductive masculine organs.....	1	2	d. Menstruation or Period.....	1	2	e. Pregnancy.....	1	2	f. Delivery.....	1	2	g. Sex.....	1	2	h. STIs.....	1	2	i. Contraceptive methods.....	1	2	j. AIDS.....	1	2	k. Homosexuality.....	1	2	l. Prostitution.....	1	2	m. Lactation.....	1	2	Other..... (Specify)			
	Yes	No																																														
a. Physical changes.....	1	2																																														
b. Reproductive feminine organs.....	1	2																																														
c. Reproductive masculine organs.....	1	2																																														
d. Menstruation or Period.....	1	2																																														
e. Pregnancy.....	1	2																																														
f. Delivery.....	1	2																																														
g. Sex.....	1	2																																														
h. STIs.....	1	2																																														
i. Contraceptive methods.....	1	2																																														
j. AIDS.....	1	2																																														
k. Homosexuality.....	1	2																																														
l. Prostitution.....	1	2																																														
m. Lactation.....	1	2																																														
Other..... (Specify)																																																
122	In which level of education were you when you received the first lesson?	Primary..... 1 Secondary..... 2 Higher..... 3 Non-formal..... 4 Non-Standard Curriculum..... 5 None..... 6																																														

NOW I WOULD LIKE TO ASK YOU SOME PERSONAL AND VERY INTIMATE QUESTIONS THAT ARE VERY IMPORTANT FOR OUR SURVEY. I WOULD LIKE TO REMIND YOU THAT THE INFORMATION YOU PROVIDE TO US IS CONFIDENTIAL.																					
123	Have you ever had sexual relations?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2	> 401																		
123a	In what month and year did you have your first sexual relation ?	Month..... Year.....																			
124	How old were you in completed years when you had sex for the first time?	Age in completed years.....																			
125	How old in completed years was the person you had sex with?	Age in completed years.....																			
126	At the time you had sex for the first time, would you say you felt (READ OUT RESPONSES)	<table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Yes</th> <th>No</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Very happy to have sex with the person.</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Unsure if you wanted to have sex with that person.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Pressured by that person to have sex ...</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Coerced or forced into having sex</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other..... (Specify)</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Yes	No	Very happy to have sex with the person.	1	2	Unsure if you wanted to have sex with that person.....	1	2	Pressured by that person to have sex ...	1	2	Coerced or forced into having sex	1	2	Other..... (Specify)			
	Yes	No																			
Very happy to have sex with the person.	1	2																			
Unsure if you wanted to have sex with that person.....	1	2																			
Pressured by that person to have sex ...	1	2																			
Coerced or forced into having sex	1	2																			
Other..... (Specify)																					
127	What was your relation with that person at that moment?	Husband/ Partner..... 1 Fiance` / Lover..... 2 Friend..... 3 Father..... 4 Brother..... 5 Uncle..... 6 OtherRelative..... 7 Stranger/ Just met..... 8 Rapist..... 9 Other.....																			
128	Did you or your partner use any contraceptive method during this first sexual relation?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2 Don't know..... 9	> 130 > 201																		
129	Why didn't you or your partner do anything nor use a method to avoid getting pregnant in this first relation?	Didn't plan to have relations at that moment..... 01 Did not know any method..... 02 Contraceptive damages health..... 03 Wanted to have a Child..... 04 Unsatisfactory relations with Contraceptive 05 Wanted to Use but could not get it..... 06 Partner Opposition..... 07 Thought could not get pregnant..... 08 Did not have Money..... 09 Ashamed to buy it..... 10 Religion did not allow it..... 11 Was Raped..... 12 Did not want to use/ did not like..... 13 Other..... (Specify)	THEN SKIP TO 201																		
130	What was the contraceptive method that you or your partner usedwhen you had sex for the first time?	Pills..... 01 Iud..... 02 Injection..... 03 Diaphragm/Foam/Jelly..... 04 Male condom..... 05 Female Condom..... 06 Female Sterilization..... 07 Male Sterilization..... 08 Traditional..... 09 Withdrawal..... 10 Don't Remember..... 11																			
131	Who decided to use that method in the first relation?	Self..... 1 Partner..... 2 Both..... 3 Don't remember..... 4																			

SECTION 2: FERTILITY AND CHILD MORTALITY MODULE (FEMALES 12 - 49 YEARS)

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO
<i>Now, I would like to ask about all the live births you have had during your life time (bear with me if I would be repeating some of the questions).</i>			
201	Have you ever been pregnant ?	Yes 1 No 2	>401
202	How old were you in completed years when you became pregnant the first time ? PROBE FOR COMPLETED YEARS	Age in years <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	
203	Have you ever given birth to a live child ?	Yes 1 No 2	>212
203a	How old were you in completed years when you gave birth to a live child for the first time ? PROBE FOR COMPLETED YEARS I mean the very first time you gave birth, even if the child is no longer alive.	Age in years <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	
204	During your life, how many live births in total have you had ? INCLUDE ANY (OTHER) BOY OR GIRL WHO CRIED OR SHOWED ANY SIGN OF LIFE BUT ONLY SURVIVED A FEW HOURS OR DAYS ? CHECK P31 AND CORRECT IF NECESSARY.	Girls..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Boys..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	

SECTION 2: FERTILITY AND CHILD MORTALITY MODULE (cont'd)

Now I would like to talk to you about all of your live births, Whether still alive or not starting with the first one.
WITH BRACKETS. BEFORE ASKING QUESTIONS 206-211, CHECK THAT THE TOTAL NUMBER OF CHILDREN WHOSE NAMES ARE RECORDED IS EQUAL TO THE TOTAL IN 204

RECORD MULTIPLE BIRTHS (OR TWINS) ON SEPARATE LINES AND MARK

	205 LIST ALL BIRTHS STARTING WITH THE FIRST CHILD.	206 Is a boy or a girl ? CIRCLE CODE	207 In what month and year was .....born ? Jan. - 01 Jul. - 07 Feb. - 02 Aug. - 08 Mar. - 03 Sep. - 09 Apr. - 04 Oct. - 10 May - 05 Nov. - 11 Jun. - 06 Dec. - 12	208 Is .....still alive ? IF YES GO TO 210	209 FOR THOSE WHO ARE DEAD How old was in completed years when he/she died ? CIRCLE AND ENTER CODE. RECORD DAYS IF LESS THAN ONE MONTH, MONTHS IF LESS THAN ONE YEAR. GO TO NEXT CHILD OR 212 IF NO OTHER CHILD LISTED	210 FOR THOSE WHO ARE ALIVE How old is .....in completed years? RECORD AGE IN COMPLETED YEARS. RECONCILE WITH 207	211 Is living with you now? RECONCILE WITH P32 & P33
01	(Name)	BOY 1 GIRL 2	Month Year.....	Yes 1 No 2	Day s..... 1 Months..... 2 Years..... 3	Age	Yes 1 No 2
02	(Name)	BOY 1 GIRL 2	Month Year.....	Yes 1 No 2	Day s..... 1 Months..... 2 Years..... 3	Age	Yes 1 No 2
03	(Name)	BOY 1 GIRL 2	Month Year.....	Yes 1 No 2	Day s..... 1 Months..... 2 Years..... 3	Age	Yes 1 No 2
04	(Name)	BOY 1 GIRL 2	Month Year.....	Yes 1 No 2	Day s..... 1 Months..... 2 Years..... 3	Age	Yes 1 No 2
05	(Name)	BOY 1 GIRL 2	Month Year.....	Yes 1 No 2	Day s..... 1 Months..... 2 Years..... 3	Age	Yes 1 No 2
06	(Name)	BOY 1 GIRL 2	Month Year.....	Yes 1 No 2	Day s..... 1 Months..... 2 Years..... 3	Age	Yes 1 No 2
07	(Name)	BOY 1 GIRL 2	Month Year.....	Yes 1 No 2	Day s..... 1 Months..... 2 Years..... 3	Age	Yes 1 No 2
08	(Name)	BOY 1 GIRL 2	Month Year.....	Yes 1 No 2	Day s..... 1 Months..... 2 Years..... 3	Age	Yes 1 No 2
09	(Name)	BOY 1 GIRL 2	Month Year.....	Yes 1 No 2	Day s..... 1 Months..... 2 Years..... 3	Age	Yes 1 No 2
10	(Name)	BOY 1 GIRL 2	Month Year.....	Yes 1 No 2	Day s..... 1 Months..... 2 Years..... 3	Age	Yes 1 No 2
11	(Name)	BOY 1 GIRL 2	Month Year.....	Yes 1 No 2	Day s..... 1 Months..... 2 Years..... 3	Age	Yes 1 No 2

SECTION 2: FERTILITY AND CHILD MORTALITY MODULE (cont'd)

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO
212	Are you pregnant now ?	Yes 1 No 2 Unsure 3	----- > 219 ----- > 219
213	For how many months have you been pregnant ?	Months..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	
214	Since you have been pregnant, have you been given any injection to prevent the baby from getting tetanus after birth ?	Yes 1 No 2 Type of Injection Unknown..... 3	----- > 217
215	How many injections did you receive ?	Number..... <input type="text"/> Don't Know..... 9	
216	Where did you go to get the (last) injection ?	Public sector Govt. hospital..... 21 Govt. clinic/health post..... 22 Private Medical Sector Private hospital..... 31 Private clinic..... 32 Other source _____ (specify)	
217	Did you consult anyone for a prenatal checkup ?	Yes 1 No 2	----- > 220
218	Whom did you consult the first time ? PROBE FOR TYPE OF PERSON AND RECORD MOST QUALIFIED.	Health professional: Doctor..... 1 Nurse/midwife..... 2 Auxiliary nurse..... 3 Other person Traditional birth attendant..... 4 Traditional Doctor..... 5 Relative/friend..... 6 Other (specify) _____	THEN GO TO 220
219	How long ago did you begin your last menstrual period ? (IF LESS THAN A DAY ENTER 00 FOR DAYS)	Days ago 1 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Weeks ago 2 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Months ago 3 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Years ago..... 4 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Before Last Birth 95 Never Menstruated..... 96	----- > 221
220	How old were you when you had your first menstrual period ?	Age..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	
221	When do you think that a woman has the greatest chance of becoming pregnant during the monthly cycle if she is not using contraceptives?	Just Before Her Period Begins..... 1 During Her Period 2 Right After Her Period Has Ended . 3 In the Middle of the Cycle 4 At Any Time 5 Don't Know..... 9 Other _____ (Specify)	

SECTION 2: FERTILITY AND CHILD MORTALITY MODULE (cont'd)

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO																								
222	LOOK AT 201 & 212, CIRCLE AND ENTER THE CODE. EVER BEEN PREGNANT OR PREGNANT NOW?	Yes..... 1 <input type="text"/> No..... 2 <input type="text"/> ----- > 401																									
223	LOOK AT 103, CIRCLE AND ENTER THE CODE. EVER ATTENDED SCHOOL ?	Yes..... 1 <input type="text"/> No..... 2 <input type="text"/> ----- > 228																									
224	Have you ever left formal school due to pregnancy ?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2 ----- > 228																									
225	How many times have you left school due to pregnancy ?	<input type="text"/>																									
226	Which grade and level were you when you left school because of the pregnancy the first time ? CHECK P17 & P20 CODES FROM HOUSEHOLD QUEST.	<input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																									
227	Did you return to school after you dropped out due to the (last) pregnancy?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2																									
228	LOOK AT 203, CIRCLE AND ENTER THE CODE. EVER GIVEN A LIVE BIRTH?	Yes..... 1 <input type="text"/> No..... 2 <input type="text"/> ----- > 238																									
229	Were you married at the time you gave birth to your first child ?	Yes..... 1 ----- > 238 No..... 2																									
230	Whom were you living with?	Mother..... 1 Father..... 2 Both Parents..... 3 Guardian..... 4 None..... 5																									
231	What was your mother's/ father's/ guardian's reaction to your pregnancy ?	<table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th></th><th>Mother</th><th>Father</th><th>Guardian</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Pleased</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr> <td>Angry</td><td>2</td><td>2</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr> <td>Indifferent</td><td>3</td><td>3</td><td>3</td></tr> <tr> <td>Don't Know.....</td><td>9</td><td>9</td><td>9</td></tr> <tr> <td>Other</td><td colspan="3">(Specify)</td></tr> </tbody> </table>		Mother	Father	Guardian	Pleased	1	1	1	Angry	2	2	2	Indifferent	3	3	3	Don't Know.....	9	9	9	Other	(Specify)			
	Mother	Father	Guardian																								
Pleased	1	1	1																								
Angry	2	2	2																								
Indifferent	3	3	3																								
Don't Know.....	9	9	9																								
Other	(Specify)																										
232	Did they claim compensation (damage) from the father's parents?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2																									
233	Before you became pregnant, did your parents or guardians ever discuss pregnancy or family planning with you ?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2																									
234	Before you became pregnant, did you think your partner would marry you if you had a child ?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2																									
235	When you became pregnant, did you discuss marriage with the child's father?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2																									
236	When you became pregnant, how long did you continue the relationship with the child's father ? IF LESS THAN A MONTH ENTER 00 FOR MONTHS	Months..... <input type="text"/> Years..... <input type="text"/> Still continuing..... 91 Got Married 92	--- > 238																								

SECTION 2: FERTILITY AND CHILD MORTALITY MODULE (cont'd)

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO															
237	Does the father ever visit the child or ask to visit the child ?	Yes..... 1 No.....2 Child Lives with Father..... 3 Child Dead.....4 Father Dead 5 Both child & father Dead..... 6																
238	<p>PRESENCE OF OTHERS AT THIS POINT.</p> <p>Circle type of persons present during the fertility section interview</p>	<table><thead><tr><th></th><th>YES</th><th>NO</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>CHILDREN UNDER 10</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr><tr><td>HUSBAND/PARTNER</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr><tr><td>OTHER MALES.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr><tr><td>OTHER FEMALES</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr></tbody></table>		YES	NO	CHILDREN UNDER 10	1	2	HUSBAND/PARTNER	1	2	OTHER MALES.....	1	2	OTHER FEMALES	1	2	
	YES	NO																
CHILDREN UNDER 10	1	2																
HUSBAND/PARTNER	1	2																
OTHER MALES.....	1	2																
OTHER FEMALES	1	2																

SECTION 3: MATERNAL AND NEWBORN HEALTH MODULE (FEMALES 12-49 YEARS)

THIS MODULE (301 - 324) IS TO BE ADMINISTERED TO ALL FEMALES WITH A LIVE BIRTH IN 2 YEARS PRECEDING DATE OF INTERVIEW.
 CHECK 205 (FERT. & CHILD MORTALITY MODULE) AND RECORD NAME OF LAST-BORN CHILD HERE _____
 USE THIS CHILD'S NAME IN THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS, WHERE INDICATED.

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO
301	CHECK 207 IF LAST LIVE BIRTH OCCURRED WITHIN THE LAST 2 YEARS PRECEDING DATE OF INTERVIEW	Yes..... 1 No..... 2	> 401
302	In the first two months after your last birth [the birth of], did you receive a Vitamin A dose like this? SHOW 200,000 IU CAPSULE OR DISPENSER.	Yes..... 1 No..... 2 Don't Know..... 9	
303	Did you see anyone for antenatal care for this pregnancy?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2	>307
304	Whom did you see? PROBE FOR THE TYPE OF PERSON SEEN AND CIRCLE ALL ANSWERS GIVEN.	Health professional: Doctor..... 1 Nurse/midwife..... 2 Auxiliary nurse..... 3 Other person Traditional birth attendant..... 4 Traditional Doctor..... 5 Relative/friend..... 6 Other (<i>specify</i>)	→ 307
305	At what stage of pregnancy did you start your Antenatal care visit?	_____ months	
306	How many times did you go for Antenatal care visits on this pregnancy?	1 to 4 times..... 1 More than 4 times.....2	

SECTION 3: MATERNAL AND NEWBORN HEALTH MODULE (cont'd)

307	<p>Who assisted with the delivery of your last child.....?</p> <p>REFER TO 205, BIRTH CHART.</p> <p>PROBE FOR TYPE OF PERSON AND RECORD THE MOST QUALIFIED.</p>	<p>Health professional:</p> <p>Doctor..... 1</p> <p>Nurse/midwife..... 2</p> <p>Auxiliary nurse.....3</p> <p>Other person</p> <p>Traditional birth attendant..... 4</p> <p>Traditional Doctor..... 5</p> <p>Relative/friend..... 6</p> <p>No one..... 7</p> <p>Other (<i>specify</i>)</p>	
308	<p>Where did you give birth to ?</p> <p>IF SOURCE IS HOSPITAL, HEALTH CENTER, OR CLINIC, WRITE THE NAME OF THE PLACE BELOW.</p> <p>PROBE TO IDENTIFY THE TYPE OF SOURCE AND CIRCLE THE APPROPRIATE CODE.</p> <p>_____</p> <p>(<i>Name of place</i>)</p>	<p>Home</p> <p>Your home..... 11</p> <p>Other home..... 12</p> <p>Public sector</p> <p>Govt. hospital..... 21</p> <p>Govt. clinic/health center..... 22</p> <p>Private Medical Sector</p> <p>Private hospital..... 31</p> <p>Private clinic..... 32</p> <p>Other source _____</p> <p>(<i>specify</i>)</p>	
309	<p>Why did you deliver there?</p>	<p>Better help available..... 1</p> <p>More hygienic..... 2</p> <p>Health concerns..... 3</p> <p>No help available..... 4</p> <p>No transportation available..... 5</p> <p>Tradition/ custom..... 6</p> <p>Superstitions..... 7</p> <p>Other _____</p> <p>(<i>Specify</i>)</p>	
310	<p>When your last child was born, was he/she large, average or small?</p>	<p>Large..... 1</p> <p>Average..... 2</p> <p>Small..... 3</p>	
310a	<p>Was delivered normally or by caesarian?</p>	<p>Normal delivery..... 1</p> <p>Caesarian delivery..... 2</p>	
311	<p>Was weighed at birth?</p>	<p>Yes..... 1</p> <p>No..... 2</p> <p>Don't know..... 9</p>	
312	<p>How much did weigh?</p> <p>RECORD WEIGHT FROM HEALTH CARD, IF AVAILABLE.</p>	<p>From card... (kilograms) _____</p> <p>From recall.. (kilograms) _____</p> <p>No card..... 3</p>	
313	<p>Did you ever breastfeed?</p>	<p>Yes..... 1</p> <p>No..... 2</p>	> 315
314	<p>How long after birth did you first give the breast?</p>	<p>Immediately..... 00</p> <p>Between 1 and 24 Hours..... __ __</p> <p>or</p> <p>Days..... __ __</p> <p>Don't remember 98</p>	

SECTION 3: MATERNAL AND NEWBORN HEALTH MODULE (cont'd)

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO
315	When you were pregnant with your last child, did you have difficulty with your vision during the day ?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2	
316	When you were pregnant with your last child, did you have difficulty with your vision during the night ?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2	

TETANUS TOXOID (TT) MODULE (FEMALES WITH A LIVE BIRTH 2 YEARS BEFORE INTERVIEW)

This module is to be administered to all women with a live birth 2 years preceding date of interview.																		
NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO															
317	When you were pregnant with your last child, did you receive any injection to prevent him or her from getting tetanus, that is convulsions after birth (an anti-tetanus shot, an injection at the top of the arm or shoulder)?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2 Unsure/ Don't Remember... 3	-----> 319 -----> 319															
318	How many doses/ injections of tetanus toxoid did you receive during this last pregnancy ?	Number of doses..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																
319	Did you receive any tetanus toxoid injection at any time before your last pregnancy ? (Including during a previous pregnancy or between pregnancies)	Yes..... 1 No..... 2 Don't know..... 9	-----> 324 -----> 324															
320	How many doses/ injections of tetanus toxoid did you receive before your last pregnancy?	Number of doses..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Don't know..... 99																
321	Considering all the pregnancies you have had when did you receive the last dose of tetanus toxoid?	Month..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Year..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																
322	How many years ago did you receive the last anti-tetanus injection before that last pregnancy?	Years ago..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																
323	ADD RESPONSES TO 318 AND 320 TO OBTAIN TOTAL DOSES IN LIFE TIME.	Total number of doses <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																
324	PRESENCE OF OTHERS AT THIS POINT	<table> <tr> <td></td> <td>Yes</td> <td>No</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CHILDREN UNDER 10.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HUSBAND/PARTNER.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OTHER MALES.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OTHER FEMALES.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> </table>		Yes	No	CHILDREN UNDER 10.....	1	2	HUSBAND/PARTNER.....	1	2	OTHER MALES.....	1	2	OTHER FEMALES.....	1	2	
	Yes	No																
CHILDREN UNDER 10.....	1	2																
HUSBAND/PARTNER.....	1	2																
OTHER MALES.....	1	2																
OTHER FEMALES.....	1	2																

SECTION 4: CONTRACEPTION

Now I would like to talk about a different topic. There are various ways or methods that a woman or man can use to delay or avoid a pregnancy.

CIRCLE CODE 2 IF METHOD NOT RECOGNIZED. THEN, FOR EACH METHOD WITH CODE 1 CIRCLED IN 402, ASK 403-405 BEFORE PROCEEDING TO THE NEXT METHOD.

401	402 Have you ever heard of (METHOD) ? READ DESCRIPTION. IF NO GO TO NEXT METHOD	403 Have you ever used (METHOD) ? IF 1 or 2 GO TO 405	404 Where would you go to obtain (METHOD) if you wanted to use it ? (SEE CODES BELOW)	405 In your opinion, what is the main problem, if any, with using (METHOD) ? (SEE CODES BELOW)
01 PILL (Women can take a pill every day).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, EVER USED.....1 CURRENTLY USING.....2 NEVER USED.....3	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____
02 IUD (Women can have a loop or coil placed inside them by a Doctor or a nurse).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, EVER USED.....1 CURRENTLY USING.....2 NEVER USED.....3	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____
03 INJECTIONS (Women can have an injection by a Doctor or Nurse which stops them from becoming pregnant for several months).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, EVER USED.....1 CURRENTLY USING.....2 NEVER USED.....3	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____
04 DIAPHRAGM/FOAM/JELLY (Women can place a sponge, suppository, diaphragm, jelly or cream inside them before intercourse.)	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, EVER USED.....1 CURRENTLY USING.....2 NEVER USED.....3	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____
05 CONDOM (Men/Women can use a rubber sheath during sexual intercourse.)	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, EVER USED.....1 CURRENTLY USING.....2 NEVER USED.....3	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____
06 FEMALE STERILIZATION (Women can have an operation to avoid having any more children).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, EVER USED.....1 CURRENTLY USING.....2 NEVER USED.....3	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____
07 MALE STERILIZATION (Men can have an operation to avoid having any more children).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, EVER USED.....1 CURRENTLY USING.....2 NEVER USED.....3	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____
08 TRADITIONAL METHOD (A woman and a man can be given something by a traditional practitioner to avoid getting pregnant).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, EVER USED.....1 CURRENTLY USING.....2 NEVER USED.....3	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____
09 PERIODIC ABSTINENCE (Rhythm) (women or men can deliberately avoid having sexual intercourse on certain days of the month when the woman is more likely to become pregnant).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, EVER USED.....1 CURRENTLY USING.....2 NEVER USED.....3	Where would you go to obtain advice on periodic abstinence ? <div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____
10 PROLONGED ABSTINENCE (A Woman and a man can deliberately abstain from sexual intercourse for several months or more in order to avoid having a child)	YES.....1 NO.....2	YES, EVER USED.....1 CURRENTLY USING.....2 NEVER USED.....3	Where would you go to obtain advice on prolonged abstinence ? <div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____
11 WITHDRAWAL (Men can be careful and pull out before ejaculation).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, EVER USED.....1 CURRENTLY USING.....2 NEVER USED.....3	Where would you go to obtain advice on withdrawal? <div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____
12 ANY OTHER METHODS ? (One may have heard of any other ways or methods that women or men can use to avoid pregnancy) _____ (Specify)	YES.....1 NO.....2	YES, EVER USED.....1 CURRENTLY USING.....2 NEVER USED.....3	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____	<div><div></div><div></div></div> OTHER _____
406 LOOK AT 403, CIRCLE CODE	EVER USED METHOD.....1 NEVER USED METHOD.....2			> 435

CODES FOR 404

01 Health Post	07 Nowhere
02 Clinic	08 Peer group
03 Hospital	09 Parents/Friends
04 Private Doctor/Clinic	10 Church
05 Pharmacy	11 Marriage counselors
06 Traditional practitioner	12 Workplace
	99 Don't know

CODES FOR 405

01 Not effective	07 Method permanent
02 Partner disapproved	08 None
03 Side effects	99 Don't Know
04 Difficult to obtain	Other _____
05 Costs too much	(Specify)
06 Inconvenient to use	

SECTION 4: CONTRACEPTION (cont'd)

NO	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO
407	How many children, if any, did you have when you first did something or used a method to avoid getting pregnant? IF NONE ENTER '00'.	Number of Children..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	
408	I WOULD LIKE TO TALK WITH YOU ABOUT ANOTHER SUBJECT – FAMILY PLANNING AND REPRODUCTIVE HEALTH LOOK AT 212, CIRCLE AND ENTER THE CODE:	Yes, currently pregnant..... 1 <input type="text"/> No..... 2 <input type="text"/> Unsure 3 <input type="text"/>	> 429
409	Are you currently doing something or using any method to avoid getting pregnant ?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2	> 429
410	Which is the main method you are currently using ?	Pill..... 01 IUD..... 02 Injection..... 03 Diaphragm/Foam/Jelly..... 04 Male Condom..... 05 Female Condom..... 06 Female Sterilization..... 07 Male Sterilization..... 08 Traditional..... 09 Periodic Abstinence..... 10 Prolonged Abstinence..... 11 Withdrawal..... 12 Other _____ (Specify)	→ 415 → 413 → 414 → 415 → 418 → 415
411	Please show me the package of pills you are now using. (RECORD NAME OF BRAND).	Brand Name..... Not able to Show..... 96	
412	Any person can miss taking the pill sometime. What did you do the last time that you forgot to take one pill?	Never Forget..... 1 Took One Pill the Next Day 2 Took Two Pills the Next Day..... 3 Not Sure 4 Other _____ (Specify)	
412a	How many PACKETS OF PILLS did you get the last time?	Number of Packets..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	> 415
413	How many CONDOMS did you get the last time?	Number of Condoms..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	> 415
414	In what month and year did you /he have the operation (to be sterilized)	DATE: Month..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Year..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Don't know 99	THEN SKIP TO 415a
415	Where did you visit to obtain (CURRENT METHOD) ?	Health Post..... 01 Clinic..... 02 Hospital..... 03 Private Doctor/hospital/clinic..... 04 Pharmacy..... 05 Traditional practitioner..... 06 Workplace..... 07 Recreational Place..... 08 Friends/Relatives..... 09 Don't Know..... 99 Other _____ (Specify)	→ 416

SECTION 4: CONTRACEPTION (cont'd)

NO	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO																																										
415a	Where did the sterilization take place ?	Clinic..... 1 Hospital..... 2 Private Doctor/hopital/clinic..... 3 Traditional Practitioner..... 4 Don't Know..... 9 Other _____ (Specify)																																											
416	Was there anything you particularly disliked about the services you received there ? IF YES: What ? IF STERILIZATION GO TO 418 AND DO NOT ASK QUESTION 417	Wait too long..... 1 Staff Discourteous..... 2 Services Expensive..... 3 Desired Method Unavailable..... 4 Husband/Partner Obtained Method..... 5 No Complaints..... 6 Other _____ (Specify)																																											
417	At any time in the past month, have you interrupted use of (CURRENT METHOD) for any of the following reasons: READ OUT RESPONSES	<table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th></th><th>YES</th><th>NO</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>Headache.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Nausea/Vomiting.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Hypertension.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Weight Gain.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Spotting/Bleeding.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Period Did Not Come.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Dizziness.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Allergy.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Reduces Sex Drive.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Not Sexually Active.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Forgot/Misplaced/Ran Out.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr><td>Other.....</td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td colspan="3">(Specify)</td></tr> </tbody> </table>		YES	NO	Headache.....	1	2	Nausea/Vomiting.....	1	2	Hypertension.....	1	2	Weight Gain.....	1	2	Spotting/Bleeding.....	1	2	Period Did Not Come.....	1	2	Dizziness.....	1	2	Allergy.....	1	2	Reduces Sex Drive.....	1	2	Not Sexually Active.....	1	2	Forgot/Misplaced/Ran Out.....	1	2	Other.....			(Specify)			
	YES	NO																																											
Headache.....	1	2																																											
Nausea/Vomiting.....	1	2																																											
Hypertension.....	1	2																																											
Weight Gain.....	1	2																																											
Spotting/Bleeding.....	1	2																																											
Period Did Not Come.....	1	2																																											
Dizziness.....	1	2																																											
Allergy.....	1	2																																											
Reduces Sex Drive.....	1	2																																											
Not Sexually Active.....	1	2																																											
Forgot/Misplaced/Ran Out.....	1	2																																											
Other.....																																													
(Specify)																																													
418	LOOK AT 410 CIRCLE AND ENTER THE CODE: PARTNER IS STERILIZED.....1 <input type="checkbox"/> CURRENTLY USING OTHER METHOD.....2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<div style="border-bottom: 1px solid black; width: 100%;"></div>	> 424																																										
419	For how long have you been using (CURRENT METHOD) ?	Months..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Years..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																																											
420	Have you experienced any problems from using (CURRENT METHOD)	Yes..... 1 No..... 2	> 422																																										
421	What is the main problem you experienced ?	Method Failed01 Partner Disapproved 02 Side effects03 No Access04 Not Available05 Cost too much06 Inconvenient to Use07 Other 08 (Specify)																																											
422	At any time during the same month, do you regularly use any method other than (CURRENT METHOD)?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2	> 424																																										
423	Which method is that ?	Pill..... 01 Iud.....02 Injection..... 03 Diaphragm/Foam/Jelly..... 04 Male Condom.....05 Female Condom.....06 Traditional 07 Periodic Abstinence.....08 Prolonged Abstinence.....09 Withdrawal..... 10 Other _____ (Specify)																																											

SECTION 4: CONTRACEPTION (cont'd)

NO	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO
424	Have you ever used any other method or done anything else before (CURRENT METHOD) to avoid getting pregnant ?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2 -----	> 429
425	Which method did you use before (CURRENT METHOD) ?	Pill..... 01 Iud..... 02 Injection..... 03 Diaphragm/Foam/Jelly..... 04 Male Condom..... 05 Female Condom..... 06 Female Sterilization..... 07 Male Sterilization..... 08 Traditional 09 Periodic Abstinence..... 10 Prolonged Abstinence..... 11 Withdrawal..... 12 Other _____ (Specify)	
426	In what month and year did you start using (METHOD BEFORE CURRENT)?	DATE: Month..... Year.....	
427	How long did you use(METHOD BEFORE CURRENT) before you stopped it?	DURATION Months..... Years.....	
428	What was the main reason you stopped using (METHOD BEFORE CURRENT) ?	Wanted a Child..... 01 Method Failed..... 02 Partner Disapproved..... 03 Health Problems..... 04 No Access..... 05 Not Available..... 06 Cost Too Much..... 07 Inconvenient To Use..... 08 Infrequent Sex..... 09 To Use Permanent Method..... 10 Fatalistic..... 11 To use other method..... 12 Partner Away..... 13 Other _____ (Specify)	
429	LOOK AT 203, CIRCLE AND ENTER CODE: ANY BIRTHS ?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2 -----	> 431
430	Since your last birth have you done anything or used any method to avoid getting pregnant ?	Yes..... 1 No..... 2 -----	> 435
431	Which was the last method you used ?	Pill..... 01 Iud..... 02 Injection..... 03 Diaphragm/Foam/Jelly..... 04 Male Condom..... 05 Female Condom..... 06 Female Sterilization..... 07 Male Sterilization..... 08 Traditional 09 Periodic Abstinence..... 10 Prolonged Abstinence..... 11 Withdrawal..... 12 Other _____ (Specify)	

SECTION 4: CONTRACEPTION (cont'd)

432	In what month and year did you start using the method used after last birth/ last time ?	DATE: Month..... Year.....	
432a	Are you currently using the method ?	Yes..... 1 ----- No..... 2 -----	> 440
433	For how long have you been using (LAST METHOD) before you stopped using it?	DURATION Months..... Years.....	
434	What was the main reason you stopped using(LAST METHOD)?	Wanted a Child..... 01 Method Failed..... 02 Partner Disapproved..... 03 Health Problems..... 04 No Access..... 05 Not Available..... 06 Cost too Much..... 07 Inconvenient to Use..... 08 Infrequent Sex..... 09 To use permanent method..... 10 Fatalistic..... 11 To use other method..... 12 Partner Away..... 13 Other _____ (Specify)	
435	Do you intend to use a method at any time in the future to avoid pregnancy ?	Yes..... 1 ----- No..... 2 ----- Unsure 3 -----	438 438
436	Which method would you prefer to use ?	Pill..... 01 Iud..... 02 Injection..... 03 Diaphragm/Foam/Jelly..... 04 Male Condom..... 05 Female Condom..... 06 Female Sterilization..... 07 Male Sterilization..... 08 Traditional 09 Periodic Abstinence..... 10 Prolonged Abstinence..... 11 Withdrawal..... 12 Other _____ (Specify)	
437	Do you intend to use (PREFERRED METHOD) in the next 12 months?	Yes..... 1 ----- No..... 2 ----- Unsure 3 -----	> 440
438	If you were to become pregnant in the next few weeks, would you feel HAPPY, or UNHAPPY, or would it NOT MATTER at all?	Happy..... 1 Unhappy..... 2 Not Matter at all..... 3	

SECTION 4: CONTRACEPTION (cont'd)

NO	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO
439	What is the main reason that you are not using a method to avoid pregnancy?	Want a Child..... 01 Lack of Knowledge..... 02 Opposed to Family Planning..... 03 Husband/Partner Disapproves..... 04 Other Disapprove..... 05 Health Problems..... 06 Difficult to Get..... 07 Costs too Much..... 08 Inconvenient to Use..... 09 Not Effective..... 10 Infrequent Sex..... 11 Fatalistic..... 12 Religion..... 13 Postpartum/Breastfeeding..... 14 Menopausal/Subfecund..... 15 Not yet sexually active..... 16 Other _____ (Specify)	
440	Is it acceptable to you for family planning information to be provided: on Radio/television ? in Newspaper/Magazine ? at church ? at Kgotla ? at workplace at primary schools at secondary schools ?	YES NO Radio/Television..... 1 2 Newspaper/Magazine..... 1 2 at Church 1 2 Kgotla/Public Meetings..... 1 2 at workplace 1 2 at primary schools 1 2 at secondary schools ? 1 2	
441	Is it acceptable to you for family planning supplies (condoms) to be provided: at church ? at Kgotla ? at workplace at primary schools at secondary schools ?	YES NO at Church 1 2 Kgotla/Public Meetings..... 1 2 at workplace..... 1 2 at primary schools..... 1 2 at secondary schools..... 1 2	
442	LOOK AT 212, CIRLE AND ENTER CODE:	CURRENTLY PREGNANT.....1 <input type="text"/> NOT PREGNANT OR UNSURE.....2 <input type="text"/>	
443	LOOK AT 207, CIRLE AND ENTER CODE:	HAD BIRTH SINCE SEPTEMBER 2002.....1 <input type="text"/> NO BIRTH SINCE SEPTEMBER 2002.....2 <input type="text"/>	
443a	LOOK AT 442 and 443, CIRCLE AND ENTER CODE:	HAD BIRTH SINCE SEPTEMBER 2002 AND PREGNANT.....1 <input type="text"/> HAD BIRTH SINCE SEPTEMBER 2002 AND NOT PREGNANT...2 <input type="text"/> NO BIRTH SINCE SEPTEMBER 2002 AND PREGNANT.....3 <input type="text"/> NO BIRTH SINCE SEPTEMBER 2002 AND NOT PREGNANT.....4 <input type="text"/>	---->501

SECTION 4: CONTRACEPTION (cont'd)

Now I would like to get some information about (your pregnancy and) the children you had in last 5 years. LOOK AT 212 AND CHECK WHETHER PREGNANT. THEN LOOK AT 205: RECORD NAMES AND LINE NUMBERS FOR BIRTHS SINCE SEPTEMBER 2002 (IF ANY).									
##		Line No. of the Child in 205 <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	CURRENTLY PREGNANT YES.....1 <input type="text"/> NO.....2 <input type="text"/> GO TO next column	LAST BIRTH Name <input type="text"/> Look at 208: ALIVE.....1 <input type="text"/> DEAD.....2 <input type="text"/>	NEXT-TO-LAST BIRTH Name <input type="text"/> Look at 208: ALIVE.....1 <input type="text"/> DEAD.....2 <input type="text"/>	SECOND-FROM-LAST Name <input type="text"/> Look at 208: ALIVE.....1 <input type="text"/> DEAD.....2 <input type="text"/>	THIRD-FROM-LAST Name <input type="text"/> Look at 208: ALIVE.....1 <input type="text"/> DEAD.....2 <input type="text"/>				
##	LOOK AT 406, CIRLE AND ENTER CODE:	EVER USED A METHOD.....1 <input type="text"/>	----->(ASK 450 FOR THE FIRST COLUMN IF YES IN 444 AND ASK 446- 452 FOR OTHER COLUMNS)						
		NEVER USED A METHOD.....2 <input type="text"/>	----->(ASK 451 FOR EACH COLUMN)						
##	Before you became pregnant (With NAME but after PRECEDING BIRTH IF ANY), had you done anything or used any method, even for a short time, to avoid getting pregnant ?	YES .....1 NO .....2 (SKIP TO 451)	YES .....1 NO .....2 (SKIP TO 451)	YES .....1 NO .....2 (SKIP TO 451)	YES .....1 NO .....2 (SKIP TO 451)	YES .....1 NO .....2 (SKIP TO 451)	YES .....1 NO .....2 (SKIP TO 451)	YES .....1 NO .....2 (SKIP TO 451)	YES .....1 NO .....2 (SKIP TO 451)
##	What was the last method you used then ?	Pill..... 01 Iud 02 Injections..... 03 Diaph/Foam/Jelly..... 04 Condom..... 05 Female sterilization..... 06 Male Sterilization..... 07 Traditional 08 Periodic Abstinence..... 09 Prolonged Abstinence..... 10 Withdrawal..... 11 Other..... (Specify)	Pill..... 01 Iud 02 Injections..... 03 Diaph/Foam/Jelly..... 04 Condom..... 05 Female sterilization..... 06 Male Sterilization..... 07 Traditional 08 Periodic Abstinence..... 09 Prolonged Abstinence..... 10 Withdrawal..... 11 Other..... (Specify)	Pill..... 01 Iud 02 Injections..... 03 Diaph/Foam/Jelly..... 04 Condom..... 05 Female sterilization..... 06 Male Sterilization..... 07 Traditional 08 Periodic Abstinence..... 09 Prolonged Abstinence..... 10 Withdrawal..... 11 Other..... (Specify)	Pill..... 01 Iud 02 Injections..... 03 Diaph/Foam/Jelly..... 04 Condom..... 05 Female sterilization..... 06 Male Sterilization..... 07 Traditional 08 Periodic Abstinence..... 09 Prolonged Abstinence..... 10 Withdrawal..... 11 Other..... (Specify)	Pill..... 01 Iud 02 Injections..... 03 Diaph/Foam/Jelly..... 04 Condom..... 05 Female sterilization..... 06 Male Sterilization..... 07 Traditional 08 Periodic Abstinence..... 09 Prolonged Abstinence..... 10 Withdrawal..... 11 Other..... (Specify)	Pill..... 01 Iud 02 Injections..... 03 Diaph/Foam/Jelly..... 04 Condom..... 05 Female sterilization..... 06 Male Sterilization..... 07 Traditional 08 Periodic Abstinence..... 09 Prolonged Abstinence..... 10 Withdrawal..... 11 Other..... (Specify)	Pill..... 01 Iud 02 Injections..... 03 Diaph/Foam/Jelly..... 04 Condom..... 05 Female sterilization..... 06 Male Sterilization..... 07 Traditional 08 Periodic Abstinence..... 09 Prolonged Abstinence..... 10 Withdrawal..... 11 Other..... (Specify)	
##	For how long had you used (LAST METHOD) ?	Months..... Years.....	Months..... Years.....	Months..... Years.....	Months..... Years.....	Months..... Years.....	Months..... Years.....	Months..... Years.....	Months..... Years.....
##	What was the main reason you stopped using(LAST METHOD) ?	Wanted a Child .....01 (Skip to next Column) Method Failed.....02 Partner Disapproved.....03 Health Problems.....04 No Access.....05 Not Available .....06 Cost too much.....07 Inconvenient to use.....08 Infrequent Sex.....09 Fatalistic.....10 Other..... (Specify)	Wanted a Child .....01 (Skip to next Column) Method Failed.....02 Partner Disapproved.....03 Health Problems.....04 No Access.....05 Not Available .....06 Cost too much.....07 Inconvenient to use.....08 Infrequent Sex.....09 Fatalistic.....10 Other..... (Specify)	Wanted a Child .....01 (Skip to next Column) Method Failed.....02 Partner Disapproved.....03 Health Problems.....04 No Access.....05 Not Available .....06 Cost too much.....07 Inconvenient to use.....08 Infrequent Sex.....09 Fatalistic.....10 Other..... (Specify)	Wanted a Child .....01 (Skip to next Column) Method Failed.....02 Partner Disapproved.....03 Health Problems.....04 No Access.....05 Not Available .....06 Cost too much.....07 Inconvenient to use.....08 Infrequent Sex.....09 Fatalistic.....10 Other..... (Specify)	Wanted a Child .....01 (Skip to next Column) Method Failed.....02 Partner Disapproved.....03 Health Problems.....04 No Access.....05 Not Available .....06 Cost too much.....07 Inconvenient to use.....08 Infrequent Sex.....09 Fatalistic.....10 Other..... (Specify)	Wanted a Child .....01 (Skip to next Column) Method Failed.....02 Partner Disapproved.....03 Health Problems.....04 No Access.....05 Not Available .....06 Cost too much.....07 Inconvenient to use.....08 Infrequent Sex.....09 Fatalistic.....10 Other..... (Specify)	Wanted a Child .....01 (Skip to next Column) Method Failed.....02 Partner Disapproved.....03 Health Problems.....04 No Access.....05 Not Available .....06 Cost too much.....07 Inconvenient to use.....08 Infrequent Sex.....09 Fatalistic.....10 Other..... (Specify)	
##	Did you become pregnant while you were using (LAST METHOD) ?	Yes..... 1 (SKIP TO 452) No..... 2	Yes..... 1 (SKIP TO 452) No..... 2	Yes..... 1 (SKIP TO 452) No..... 2	Yes..... 1 (SKIP TO 452) No..... 2	Yes..... 1 (SKIP TO 452) No..... 2	Yes..... 1 (SKIP TO 452) No..... 2	Yes..... 1 (SKIP TO 452) No..... 2	Yes..... 1 (SKIP TO 452) No..... 2
##	At the time you became pregnant (with), did you want to have a child THEN, did you want to wait until LATER, or did you want NO MORE children at all ?	Then.....1 Later.....2 No More.....3 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)	Then.....1 Later.....2 No More.....3 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)	Then.....1 Later.....2 No More.....3 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)	Then.....1 Later.....2 No More.....3 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)	Then.....1 Later.....2 No More.....3 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)	Then.....1 Later.....2 No More.....3 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)	Then.....1 Later.....2 No More.....3 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)	Then.....1 Later.....2 No More.....3 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)
##	Did you want to have a child but at a later time, or not have another child at all ?	Have Child Later.....1 Not Have Child.....2 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)	Have Child Later.....1 Not Have Child.....2 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)	Have Child Later.....1 Not Have Child.....2 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)	Have Child Later.....1 Not Have Child.....2 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)	Have Child Later.....1 Not Have Child.....2 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)	Have Child Later.....1 Not Have Child.....2 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)	Have Child Later.....1 Not Have Child.....2 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)	Have Child Later.....1 Not Have Child.....2 (ALL GO TO NEXT COLUMN)

SECTION 5: FERTILITY PREFERENCE

NO	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO																
501	LOOK AT 111, CIRCLE AND ENTER CODE: CURRENTLY MARRIED / LIVING TOGETHER?	Yes.....1 <input type="text"/> No.....2 <input type="text"/>	> 512																
502	LOOK AT 212, CIRCLE AND ENTER CODE: CURRENTLY PREGNANT.....1 <input type="text"/> NOT PREGNANT OR NOT SURE.....2 <input type="text"/>		> 504																
503	NOW I HAVE SOME QUESTIONS ABOUT YOUR FUTURE PLANS. Would you like to have a (another) child or would prefer not to have any (more) children ?	Have a Child.....1 Have another Child.....2 No more Children.....3 Says she can't get Pregnant.....4 Undecided.....5	>505 > 506																
504	After the child you are expecting, would you like to have another child or would you prefer not to have any more children ?	Have a Child.....1 No more Children.....2 Undecided.....3	> 506																
505	How long would you like to wait from now before the birth of a (another) child? <i>IF PREGNANT ASK: After the birth of the child you are now expecting, how long would you want to wait before the birth of another child ?</i>	DURATION: Months..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Years..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																	
506	LOOK AT 208, CIRCLE AND ENTER CODE: HAS LIVING (CHILD)REN.....1 <input type="text"/> NO LIVING (CHILD)REN.....2 <input type="text"/> NOT APPLICABLE.....3 <input type="text"/>		> 508																
507	If you could choose exactly the number of children to have in your whole life, how many would that be ?	Number... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Any Number.....96	>509 >510																
508	If you could go back to the time before you had any children and could choose exactly the number of children to have in your whole life, how many would that be ?	Number..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Any Number.....96	>510																
509	How many of these children would you like to be boys, how many would you like to be girls and for how many would the sex not matter?	BOYS GIRLS EITHER NUMBER <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																	
510	Does your husband/partner approve or disapprove of couples using a method to avoid pregnancy ?	Approves.....1 Disapproves.....2 Not Sure.....3																	
511	How often have you talked to your husband/partner about this subject in the 12 months ?	Never.....1 Once or Twice.....2 More often.....3																	
512	Do you approve or disapprove of couples using a method to avoid pregnancy ?	Approves.....1 Disapproves.....2 Not Sure.....3																	
513	Do you approve or disapprove of premarital sexual involvement ?	Approves.....1 Disapproves.....2 Not Sure.....3																	
514	Do you approve or disapprove of the idea of providing unmarried, sexually active teenagers with contraceptive methods if they want them?	Approves.....1 Disapproves.....2 Not Sure.....3																	
515	For how long should a couple wait before starting sexual intercourse after the birth of a baby ?	DURATION: Weeks..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Months..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Years..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Dont Know.....99																	
516	Should a married/ single mother wait until she has completely stopped breastfeeding before starting to have sexual relations again?	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Yes</th> <th>No</th> <th>Don't Know</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Married Wait.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Single Wait.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other.....</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> (Specify)		Yes	No	Don't Know	Married Wait.....	1	2	9	Single Wait.....	1	2	9	Other.....				
	Yes	No	Don't Know																
Married Wait.....	1	2	9																
Single Wait.....	1	2	9																
Other.....																			

SECTION 6: HUSBAND/ PARTNER'S BACKGROUND

NO		CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO
601	LOOK AT 111, CIRCLE AND ENTER CODE: CURRENTLY MARRIED / LIVING TOGETHER?	Yes.....1 No.....2	> 609
602	Did your husband/partner ever attend school?	Yes.....1 Never Attended .....2	>604
603	What is the highest level he attended at school?	Primary.....1 Secondary.....2 Higher.....3 Non-formal.....4 Non-Standard Curriculum.....5	
604	According to your knowledge, does your husband/partner work for payment or self employed?	Yes, As An Employee .....1 Yes, For Self.....2 No.....3	> 606
605	Then what does your husband/partner do regularly?	Unpaid family Helper in business.....1 Work at own Lands/Cattle post.....2 Actively Seeking Work.....3 Housework.....4 Student.....5 Retired.....6 Other _____ (Specify)	> 607
606	What type of work does your husband/partner do ? (Use two or more words to describe occupation)	_____	
607	Before you married your husband/partner, did you yourself ever have a business of your own or did you ever work for someone else for a regular wage or payment in kind?	Yes.....1 No.....2	
608	Since you got married to your husband/partner, have you ever owned a business or worked for someone else for a regular wage or payment in kind?	Yes.....1 No.....2	
609	LOOK AT 210,CIRCLE CODE: HAS LIVING CHILDREN 14 YEARS & BELOW?	Yes.....1 No.....2 Not applicable.....3	>611 >613
610	Who usually cares for your child(ren) while you are away from home?	Myself (take them with me).....01 Husband/Partner.....02 Respondent's Parents.....03 Husband's/Partner's Parents.....04 Older Children .....05 Other Relatives.....06 Friends.....07 Servants.....08 No One/Themselves.....09 Living Elsewhere.....10 Day Care Centre/ Pre-school.....11 Other _____ (Specify)	
611	Do you receive any support for your child(ren) from: READ OUT RESPONSES	YES NO DEAD Father of the Children.....1 2 3 Respondent's Father.....1 2 3 Respondent's Mother.....1 2 3 Other Maternal Relatives.....1 2 3 Paternal Grandparents.....1 2 3 Other Paternal Relatives.....1 2 3 Other..... (Specify)	
612	Do you presently receive child support through the Affiliation Act ?	Yes.....1 No.....2	
613	PRESENCE OF OTHERS AT THIS POINT. Circle type of persons present during this interview	YES NO Children Under 10 .....1 2 Husband .....1 2 Other Males .....1 2 Other Females .....1 2	
614	RECORD THE TIME AT THE END OF INTERVIEW	Hour..... Minutes.....	



Republic of Botswana

STRICTLY CONFIDENTIAL

MINISTRY OF FINANCE & DEVELOPMENT PLANNING



2007 BOTSWANA FAMILY HEALTH SURVEY
INDIVIDUAL MALE (12 - 49 YEARS) QUESTIONNAIRE

Collected under Statistics Act (Chap. 17:01)

GENERAL INFORMATION

		IDENTIFICATION			
STRATUM NUMBER					
DISTRICT NAME /CODE					
VILLAGE NAME/CODE					
LOCALITY NAME/CODE					
EA NUMBER					
EA SERIAL NUMBER					
DWELLING NUMBER					
HOUSEHOLD NUMBER					
NAME & LINE NO. OF MAN					
NAME OF ENUMERATOR					
NAME OF SUPERVISOR					

		INTERVIEWER'S VISITS			INTERVIEW STATUS FINAL VISIT	
		1	2	3		
DATE					INTERVIEWERS' CODE	
NAME					*RESULT CODE	
RESULTS*					TOTAL VISITS	
NEXT VISIT	DATE TIME					

*RESULT CODE 1. COMPLETED 2. PRESENT BUT NOT AVAILABLE FOR INTERVIEWS 3. POSTPONED 4. REFUSED 5. PARTIALLY COMPLETED 6. OTHER _____ (SPECIFY)	COMMENTS BOX
---	---------------------

	CHECKED BY	CODED	ENTERED	ONLINE EDITED
NAME				
DATE				

IF FOUND PLEASE SEND TO: CENTRAL STATISTICS OFFICE, PRIVATE BAG 0024, GABORONE
 OR NEAREST DISTRICT COMMISSIONER OFFICE

SECTION 1. RESPONDENT'S BACKGROUND (MALES 12 - 49 YEARS)

INTRODUCTION AND CONSENT

INFORMED CONSENT

Hello. My name is _____ and I am working with CENTRAL STATISTICS OFFICE. We are conducting a national survey to ask men and women about various health issues. We would very much appreciate your participation in this survey. This information will help the government to plan health services. The survey usually takes about 40 minutes to complete. Whatever information you provide will be kept strictly confidential and will not be shown to other persons.

We hope that you will participate in this survey since your views are very important.

May I begin the interview now?

If the man does not agree to continue, thank him, and go to the next interview.

Discuss this result with your supervisor for revisit.

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO																											
	RECORD THE TIME.	HOUR <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> MINUTES <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																												
101	In what month and year were you born?	MONTH <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> YEAR <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																												
102	How old are you in completed years? RECONCILE WITH P07 FROM HOUSEHOLD QUEST.	AGE IN COMPLETED YEARS <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																												
103	Have you ever attended school?	YES 1 NO 2	→ 105																											
104	What is the highest level of school you attended	PRIMARY 1 SECONDARY 2 HIGHER 3 NON-FORMAL 4 NON-STANDARD CURRICULUM 5																												
105	Do you listen to a Radio at least once a week?	YES 1 NO 2	→ 108																											
106	Do you often listen to:	<table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">Yes</td> <td style="text-align: right;">No</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Radio Botswana (RB1).....</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1</td> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Radio Botswana (RB2).....</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1</td> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Yarona FM.....</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1</td> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Gabz FM.....</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1</td> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other.....</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3" style="text-align: center;">(Specify)</td> </tr> </table>		Yes	No	Radio Botswana (RB1).....	1	2	Radio Botswana (RB2).....	1	2	Yarona FM.....	1	2	Gabz FM.....	1	2	Other.....			(Specify)									
	Yes	No																												
Radio Botswana (RB1).....	1	2																												
Radio Botswana (RB2).....	1	2																												
Yarona FM.....	1	2																												
Gabz FM.....	1	2																												
Other.....																														
(Specify)																														
107	Do you often listen to the following programmes:	<table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">Yes</td> <td style="text-align: right;">No</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Masa-a- Sele.....</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1</td> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Maokaneng</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1</td> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Tsa Boitekanelo.....</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1</td> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Makgabaneng.....</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1</td> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dikgang.....</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1</td> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dikgang tsa Palamente.....</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1</td> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other.....</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3" style="text-align: center;">(Specify)</td> </tr> </table>		Yes	No	Masa-a- Sele.....	1	2	Maokaneng	1	2	Tsa Boitekanelo.....	1	2	Makgabaneng.....	1	2	Dikgang.....	1	2	Dikgang tsa Palamente.....	1	2	Other.....			(Specify)			
	Yes	No																												
Masa-a- Sele.....	1	2																												
Maokaneng	1	2																												
Tsa Boitekanelo.....	1	2																												
Makgabaneng.....	1	2																												
Dikgang.....	1	2																												
Dikgang tsa Palamente.....	1	2																												
Other.....																														
(Specify)																														
108	Do you watch Television at least once a week ?	YES 1 NO 2	→ 111																											
109	Do you often watch:	<table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">Yes</td> <td style="text-align: right;">No</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Botswana Television (BTV)</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1</td> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Gaborone Broadcasting Corporation (GBC).....</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1</td> <td style="text-align: right;">2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other.....</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3" style="text-align: center;">(Specify)</td> </tr> </table>		Yes	No	Botswana Television (BTV)	1	2	Gaborone Broadcasting Corporation (GBC).....	1	2	Other.....			(Specify)															
	Yes	No																												
Botswana Television (BTV)	1	2																												
Gaborone Broadcasting Corporation (GBC).....	1	2																												
Other.....																														
(Specify)																														

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO																																																
110	Do you often watch the following Programmes:	<table border="0"> <tr> <td></td> <td>Yes</td> <td>No</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Talk Back.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>The Eye.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>News Bulletin.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Matlho a Phage.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Sedibeng.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Silent Shout.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Religious Programme.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Tshamekang (sports).....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3">(Specify)</td> </tr> </table>		Yes	No	Talk Back.....	1	2	The Eye.....	1	2	News Bulletin.....	1	2	Matlho a Phage.....	1	2	Sedibeng.....	1	2	Silent Shout.....	1	2	Religious Programme.....	1	2	Tshamekang (sports).....	1	2	Other.....	1	2	(Specify)																		
	Yes	No																																																	
Talk Back.....	1	2																																																	
The Eye.....	1	2																																																	
News Bulletin.....	1	2																																																	
Matlho a Phage.....	1	2																																																	
Sedibeng.....	1	2																																																	
Silent Shout.....	1	2																																																	
Religious Programme.....	1	2																																																	
Tshamekang (sports).....	1	2																																																	
Other.....	1	2																																																	
(Specify)																																																			
MARRIAGE / UNION MODULE																																																			
111	What is your current marital status?	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>Married.....</td> <td>1</td> <td rowspan="5"> <div>→ 115</div> <div>→ 117</div> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Living together.....</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Separated.....</td> <td>3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Divorced.....</td> <td>4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Widowed.....</td> <td>5</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Never married.....</td> <td>6</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Married.....	1	<div>→ 115</div> <div>→ 117</div>	Living together.....	2	Separated.....	3	Divorced.....	4	Widowed.....	5	Never married.....	6																																				
Married.....	1	<div>→ 115</div> <div>→ 117</div>																																																	
Living together.....	2																																																		
Separated.....	3																																																		
Divorced.....	4																																																		
Widowed.....	5																																																		
Never married.....	6																																																		
112	How old is your wife/partner in completed years?	AGE IN COMPLETED YEARS <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																																																	
113	Does your wife/ partner live with you or live elsewhere now?	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>LIVING WITH ME.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>→ 115</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LIVING ELSEWHERE.....</td> <td>2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NEVER STAYED TOGETHER.....</td> <td>3</td> <td>→ 115</td> </tr> </table>	LIVING WITH ME.....	1	→ 115	LIVING ELSEWHERE.....	2		NEVER STAYED TOGETHER.....	3	→ 115																																								
LIVING WITH ME.....	1	→ 115																																																	
LIVING ELSEWHERE.....	2																																																		
NEVER STAYED TOGETHER.....	3	→ 115																																																	
114	How long has she been away? ENTER BOTH MONTHS AND YEARS	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>MONTHS.....</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>YEARS.....</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> </table>	MONTHS.....	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	YEARS.....	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																											
MONTHS.....	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																	
YEARS.....	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																	
115	In what month and year did you first marry or start living together?	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>MONTH.....</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>YEAR.....</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> </table>	MONTH.....	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	YEAR.....	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																											
MONTH.....	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																	
YEAR.....	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>																																																	
116	How old were you then?	AGE IN COMPLETED YEARS <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	→ 118																																																
117	Have you ever lived together with a partner?	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>YES.....</td> <td>1</td> <td rowspan="2">→ 120</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO.....</td> <td>2</td> </tr> </table>	YES.....	1	→ 120	NO.....	2																																												
YES.....	1	→ 120																																																	
NO.....	2																																																		
118	Have you been in a relationship with one wife/ partner in the past five years?	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>YES.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>→ 120</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO.....</td> <td>2</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	YES.....	1	→ 120	NO.....	2																																												
YES.....	1	→ 120																																																	
NO.....	2																																																		
119	How many wives/ partners including the current wife/ partner have you lived together with?	<input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																																																	
MALES 12 - 29 YEARS																																																			
120	LOOK AT 102 AND CIRCLE AS APPROPRIATE : AGE 29 YEARS AND BELOW?	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>YES.....</td> <td>1</td> <td rowspan="2">→ 201</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO.....</td> <td>2</td> </tr> </table>	YES.....	1	→ 201	NO.....	2																																												
YES.....	1	→ 201																																																	
NO.....	2																																																		
121	Have you ever attended classes on sexual education?	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>YES.....</td> <td>1</td> <td rowspan="2">→ 124</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO.....</td> <td>2</td> </tr> </table>	YES.....	1	→ 124	NO.....	2																																												
YES.....	1	→ 124																																																	
NO.....	2																																																		
122	Which topics did they talk about in these classes? (READ THE ALTERNATIVES AND MARK THOSE MENTIONED BY RESPONDENT)	<table border="0"> <tr> <td></td> <td>Yes</td> <td>No</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PHYSICAL CHANGES.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>REPRODUCTIVE FEMININE ORGANS.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>REPRODUCTIVE MASCULINE ORGANS.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MENSTRUATION OR PERIOD.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PREGNANCY.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DELIVERY.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SEX.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STIs.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CONTRACEPTIVE METHODS.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HIV/ AIDS.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HOMOSEXUALITY.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PROSTITUTION.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LACTATION.....</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OTHER.....</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3">(SPECIFY)</td> </tr> </table>		Yes	No	PHYSICAL CHANGES.....	1	2	REPRODUCTIVE FEMININE ORGANS.....	1	2	REPRODUCTIVE MASCULINE ORGANS.....	1	2	MENSTRUATION OR PERIOD.....	1	2	PREGNANCY.....	1	2	DELIVERY.....	1	2	SEX.....	1	2	STIs.....	1	2	CONTRACEPTIVE METHODS.....	1	2	HIV/ AIDS.....	1	2	HOMOSEXUALITY.....	1	2	PROSTITUTION.....	1	2	LACTATION.....	1	2	OTHER.....			(SPECIFY)			
	Yes	No																																																	
PHYSICAL CHANGES.....	1	2																																																	
REPRODUCTIVE FEMININE ORGANS.....	1	2																																																	
REPRODUCTIVE MASCULINE ORGANS.....	1	2																																																	
MENSTRUATION OR PERIOD.....	1	2																																																	
PREGNANCY.....	1	2																																																	
DELIVERY.....	1	2																																																	
SEX.....	1	2																																																	
STIs.....	1	2																																																	
CONTRACEPTIVE METHODS.....	1	2																																																	
HIV/ AIDS.....	1	2																																																	
HOMOSEXUALITY.....	1	2																																																	
PROSTITUTION.....	1	2																																																	
LACTATION.....	1	2																																																	
OTHER.....																																																			
(SPECIFY)																																																			

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO																		
123	In which level of education were you when you received the first lesson?	PRIMARY 1 SECONDARY..... 2 HIGHER..... 3 NON-FORMAL..... 4 NON-STANDARD CURRICULUM... 5 NONE..... 6																			
NOW I WOULD LIKE TO ASK YOU SOME PERSONAL AND VERY INTIMATE QUESTIONS THAT ARE VERY IMPORTANT FOR OUR SURVEY. I WOULD LIKE TO REMIND YOU THAT THE INFORMATION YOU PROVIDE TO US IS CONFIDENTIAL.																					
124	Have you ever had sexual relations?	YES..... 1 NO..... 2	→ 301																		
125	In which month and year did you have your first sexual relation ?	MONTH..... YEAR.....																			
126	How old were you in completed years when you had sex for the first time?	AGE IN COMPLETED YEARS... ..																			
127	How old in completed years was the person you had sex with ?	AGE IN COMPLETED YEARS.																			
127a	At the time you had sex for the first time, would you say you felt (READ OUT RESPONSES)	<table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th></th><th>Yes</th><th>No</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>VERY HAPPY TO HAVE SEX WITH THE PERSON.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr> <td>UNSURE IF YOU WANTED TO HAVE SEX WITH THAT PERSON.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr> <td>PRESSURED BY THAT PERSON TO HAVE SEX.....</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr> <td>COERCED OR FORCED INTO HAVING SEX</td><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr> <tr> <td>OTHER (SPECIFY)</td><td></td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table>		Yes	No	VERY HAPPY TO HAVE SEX WITH THE PERSON.....	1	2	UNSURE IF YOU WANTED TO HAVE SEX WITH THAT PERSON.....	1	2	PRESSURED BY THAT PERSON TO HAVE SEX.....	1	2	COERCED OR FORCED INTO HAVING SEX	1	2	OTHER (SPECIFY)			
	Yes	No																			
VERY HAPPY TO HAVE SEX WITH THE PERSON.....	1	2																			
UNSURE IF YOU WANTED TO HAVE SEX WITH THAT PERSON.....	1	2																			
PRESSURED BY THAT PERSON TO HAVE SEX.....	1	2																			
COERCED OR FORCED INTO HAVING SEX	1	2																			
OTHER (SPECIFY)																					
128	What was your relation with that person at that moment?	WIFE/ PARTNER..... 1 FIANCE`/ LOVER..... 2 FRIEND..... 3 FATHER..... 4 BROTHER..... 5 UNCLE..... 6 RELATIVE..... 7 STRANGER/ JUST MET..... 8 RAPIST..... 9 OTHER.....																			
129	Did you or your partner use any contraceptive method during this first sexual relation?	YES..... 1 NO..... 2 DON'T KNOW..... 9	→ 131 → 201																		
130	Why didn't you or your partner do anything nor use a contraceptive method in this first relation?	DIDN'T PLAN TO HAVE SEXUAL RELATIONS AT THAT MOMENT..... 01 DID NOT KNOW ANY METHOD..... 02 CONTRACEPTIVE DAMAGES HEALTH..... 03 WANTED TO HAVE A CHILD..... 04 UNSATISFACTORY RELATIONS WITH CONTRACEPTIVE..... 05 WANTED TO USE BUT COULD NOT GET PARTNER OPPOSITION..... 06 THOUGHT COULD NOT IMPREGNANT..... 07 DID NOT HAVE MONEY..... 08 ASHAMED TO BUY IT..... 09 RELIGION DID NOT ALLOW IT..... 10 WAS RAPED..... 11 DID NOT WANT TO USE/ DID NOT LIKE.... 12 OTHER..... 13 (SPECIFY)	THEN SKIP TO 201																		
131	What was the method of contraception that you or your partner used when you had sex for the first time?	PILLS.....01 IUD.....02 INJECTION.....03 DIAPHRAGM/FOAM/JELLY.....04 MALE CONDOM.....05 FEMALE CONDOM.....06 FEMALE STERILIZATION.....07 MALE STERILIZATION.....08 TRADITIONAL.....09 WITHDRAWAL.....10 DON'T REMEMBER.....11																			
132	Who decided to use that method in the first relation?	SELF..... 1 PARTNER..... 2 BOTH..... 3 DON'T REMEMBER..... 4																			

SECTION 2. REPRODUCTION (MALES 12 - 49 YEARS)

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP
201	<p>Now I would like to ask about any children you have had during your life time. I am interested in all of the children that are biologically yours, even if they are not legally yours or do not have your surname.</p> <p>Have you ever had biological children?</p>	<p>YES 1</p> <p>NO 2</p>	→ 301
202	<p>How many of your biological children live with you?</p> <p>IF NONE, RECORD '00'.</p>	<p>SONS..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/></p> <p>DAUGHTERS..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/></p>	
203	<p>How many of your biological children do not live with you?</p> <p>IF NONE, RECORD '00'.</p>	<p>SONS ELSEWHERE <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/></p> <p>DAUGHTERS ELSEWHEF... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/></p>	
204	<p>How many of your biological children have died?</p> <p>IF NONE, RECORD '00'.</p>	<p>SONS DEAD <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/></p> <p>DAUGHTERS DEAD..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/></p>	
205	SUM ANSWERS TO 202, 203, AND 204, AND ENTER TOTAL.	TOTAL CHILDREN <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	
206	<p>CHECK 205:</p> <p>HAS HAD MORE THAN ONE CHILD..... 1</p> <p>HAS HAD ONLY ONE CHILD..... 2</p>		→ 209
207	Did/ do all of your biological children have the same biological mother?	<p>YES 1</p> <p>NO 2</p>	→ 209
208	In all, how many women do you have biological children with?	NUMBER OF WOMEN <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	
209	How old were you in completed years when your (first) child was born?	AGE IN YEARS <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	
210	<p>CHECK 202 AND 203:</p> <p>AT LEAST ONE LIVING CHILD..... 1</p> <p>NO LIVING (CHILD)REN..... 2</p>		→ 301
211	How old is your (youngest) child in completed years?	AGE IN YEARS <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	IF AGE IS > 4 GO TO 301

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP
212	What is the name of your (youngest) child? WRITE NAME OF (YOUNGEST) CHILD _____ (NAME OF (YOUNGEST) CHILD)		
213	When 's mother was pregnant with, did she have any antenatal check-ups?	YES..... 1 NO..... 2 DON'T KNOW..... 9	→ 215
214	Were you present during any of those antenatal check-ups?	PRESENT..... 1 NOT PRESENT..... 2	
215	Where was delivered?	Home YOUR HOME..... 11 OTHER HOME..... 12 Public sector GOVT. HOSPITAL..... 21 GOVT. CLINIC/HEALTH CENTER... 22 Private Medical Sector PRIVATE HOSPITAL..... 31 PRIVATE CLINIC..... 32 OTHER SOURCE _____ (specify)	→ 301
216	What was the main reason 's mother did not deliver in a hospital or any other health facility?	COST TOO MUCH 01 FACILITY CLOSED 02 TOO FAR/NO TRANSPORTATION . 03 DON'T TRUST FACILITY/POOR QUALITY SERVICE 04 NO FEMALE HEALTH CARE PROVIDER..... 05 NOT THE FIRST CHILD 06 CHILD'S MOTHER DID NOT THINK IT WAS NECESSARY. 07 HE DID NOT THINK IT WAS NECESSARY 08 FAMILY DID NOT THINK IT WAS NECESSARY 09 OTHER _____ (SPECIFY)	

SECTION 3: CONTRACEPTION (MALES 12 - 49 YEARS)

Now I would like to talk about a different topic. There are various ways or methods that a woman or man can use to delay or avoid a pregnancy.

CIRCLE CODE 2 IF NOT RECOGNIZED. THEN, FOR EACH METHOD WITH CODE 1 CIRCLED IN 302,
ASK 303-305 BEFORE PROCEEDING TO THE NEXT METHOD.

301	302 Have you ever heard of (METHOD) ? READ DESCRIPTION. IF NO GO TO NEXT METHOD	303 Have you ever used (METHOD) ? IF 1 OR 2 GO TO 305	304 Where would you go to obtain (METHOD) if you wanted to use it ? (SEE CODES BELOW)	305 In your opinion, what is the main problem, if any, with using (METHOD) ? (SEE CODES BELOW)
01 PILL (Women can take a pill every day).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, ever used.....1 Currently using.....2 Never used.....3	OTHER [] []	OTHER [] [] [] []
02 IUD (Women can have a loop or coil placed inside them by a Doctor or a nurse).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, ever used.....1 Currently using.....2 Never used.....3	OTHER [] []	OTHER [] [] [] []
03 INJECTIONS (Women can have an injection by a Doctor or Nurse which stops them from becoming pregnant for several months).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, ever used.....1 Currently using.....2 Never used.....3	OTHER [] []	OTHER [] [] [] []
04 DIAPHRAGM/FOAM/JELLY (Women can place a sponge, suppository, diaphragm, jelly or cream inside them before intercourse.)	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, ever used.....1 Currently using.....2 Never used.....3	OTHER [] []	OTHER [] [] [] []
05 CONDOM (Men/Women can use a rubber sheath during sexual intercourse.)	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, ever used.....1 Currently using.....2 Never used.....3	OTHER [] []	OTHER [] [] [] []
06 FEMALE STERILIZATION (Women can have an operation to avoid having any more children).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, ever used.....1 Currently using.....2 Never used.....3	OTHER [] []	OTHER [] [] [] []
07 MALE STERILIZATION (Men can have an operation to avoid having any more children).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, ever used.....1 Currently using.....2 Never used.....3	OTHER [] []	OTHER [] [] [] []
08 TRADITIONAL METHOD (A woman and a man can be given something by a traditional practitioner to avoid getting pregnant).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, ever used.....1 Currently using.....2 Never used.....3	OTHER [] []	OTHER [] [] [] []
09 PERIODIC ABSTINENCE (Rhythm) (women or men can deliberately avoid having sexual intercourse on certain days of the month when the woman is more likely to become pregnant).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, ever used.....1 Currently using.....2 Never used.....3	Where would you go to obtain advice on periodic abstinence ? OTHER [] []	OTHER [] [] [] []
10 PROLONGED ABSTINENCE (A Woman and a man can deliberately abstain from sexual intercourse for several months or more in order to avoid having a child)	YES.....1 NO.....2	YES, ever used.....1 Currently using.....2 Never used.....3	Where would you go to obtain advice on prolonged abstinence ? OTHER [] []	OTHER [] [] [] []
11 WITHDRAWAL (Men can be careful and pull out before ejaculation).	YES .....1 NO.....2	YES, ever used.....1 Currently using.....2 Never used.....3	Where would you go to obtain advice on withdrawal? OTHER [] []	OTHER [] [] [] []
12 ANY OTHER METHODS ? (one may have heard of any other ways or methods that women or men can use to avoid pregnancy) _____ (Specify)	YES.....1 NO.....2	YES, ever used.....1 Currently using.....2 Never used.....3	OTHER [] []	OTHER [] [] [] []

CODES FOR 304

01 Health Post	07 Nowhere	12 Work Place
02 Clinic	08 Peer group	99 Don't know
03 Hospital	09 Parents/Friends	
04 Private Doctor/Clinic	10 Church	
05 Pharmacy	11 Marriage counselors	
06 Traditional practitioner		

CODES FOR 305

01 Not effective	06 Inconvenient to use
02 Partner disapproved	07 Method permanent
03 Side effects	08 None
04 Difficult to obtain	99 Don't Know
05 Costs too much	Other _____
	(Specify)

SECTION 3: CONTRACEPTION (MALES 12 - 49 YEARS)

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP TO																								
306	In the last few months have you: Heard about family planning on the radio? Seen about family planning on the television? Read about family planning in a newspaper or magazine?	<table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td></td><td style="text-align: right;">YES</td><td style="text-align: right;">NO</td></tr> <tr> <td>RADIO</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td></tr> <tr> <td>TELEVISION</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td></tr> <tr> <td>NEWSPAPER OR MAGAZINE</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td></tr> </table>		YES	NO	RADIO	1	2	TELEVISION	1	2	NEWSPAPER OR MAGAZINE	1	2													
	YES	NO																									
RADIO	1	2																									
TELEVISION	1	2																									
NEWSPAPER OR MAGAZINE	1	2																									
307	In the last few months, have you discussed the practice of family planning with a health worker or health professional?	YES..... 1 NO 2																									
308	Now I would like to ask you about a woman's risk of pregnancy. From one menstrual period to the next, are there certain days when a woman is more likely to become pregnant if she has sexual relations?	YES..... 1 NO 2 DON'T KNOW..... 9	310																								
309	When do you think that a woman has the greatest chance of becoming pregnant during the monthly cycle if she is not using contraceptives	JUST BEFORE HER PERIOD BEGINS 1 DURING HER PERIOD 2 RIGHT AFTER HER PERIOD HAS ENDED..... 3 IN THE MIDDLE OF THE CYCLE..... 4 AT ANYTIME..... 5 OTHER _____ <div style="text-align: center;">(SPECIFY)</div>																									
310	Do you think that a breastfeeding woman can become pregnant?	YES..... 1 NO 2 DEPENDS 3 DON'T KNOW 9																									
311	I will now read you some statements about contraception. Please tell me if you agree or disagree with each one. a) Contraception is women's business and a man should not have to worry about it. b) Women who use contraception may become promiscuous.	<table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td></td><td style="text-align: right;">AGREE</td><td style="text-align: right;">DIS-AGREE</td><td style="text-align: right;">DON'T KNOW</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONTRACEPTION WOMAN'S BUSINESS .</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td><td style="text-align: right;">9</td></tr> <tr> <td>WOMAN MAY BECOME PROMISCUOUS</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td><td style="text-align: right;">9</td></tr> </table>		AGREE	DIS-AGREE	DON'T KNOW	CONTRACEPTION WOMAN'S BUSINESS .	1	2	9	WOMAN MAY BECOME PROMISCUOUS	1	2	9													
	AGREE	DIS-AGREE	DON'T KNOW																								
CONTRACEPTION WOMAN'S BUSINESS .	1	2	9																								
WOMAN MAY BECOME PROMISCUOUS	1	2	9																								
312	Is it acceptable to you for family planning information to be provided: on Radio/television ? in Newspaper/Magazine ? at church ? at Kgotla ? at workplace? at school ?	<table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td></td><td style="text-align: right;">YES</td><td style="text-align: right;">NO</td></tr> <tr> <td>RADIO/TELEVISION.....</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td></tr> <tr> <td>NEWSPAPER/MAGAZINE.....</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td></tr> <tr> <td>AT CHURCH</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td></tr> <tr> <td>KGOTLA/PUBLIC MEETINGS.....</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td></tr> <tr> <td>AT WORKPLACE.....</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td></tr> <tr> <td>AT PRIMARY SCHOOL</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td></tr> <tr> <td>AT SECONDARY SCHOOL.....</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td></tr> </table>		YES	NO	RADIO/TELEVISION.....	1	2	NEWSPAPER/MAGAZINE.....	1	2	AT CHURCH	1	2	KGOTLA/PUBLIC MEETINGS.....	1	2	AT WORKPLACE.....	1	2	AT PRIMARY SCHOOL	1	2	AT SECONDARY SCHOOL.....	1	2	
	YES	NO																									
RADIO/TELEVISION.....	1	2																									
NEWSPAPER/MAGAZINE.....	1	2																									
AT CHURCH	1	2																									
KGOTLA/PUBLIC MEETINGS.....	1	2																									
AT WORKPLACE.....	1	2																									
AT PRIMARY SCHOOL	1	2																									
AT SECONDARY SCHOOL.....	1	2																									
313	Is it acceptable to you for family planning supplies (condoms) to be provided: at church ? at Kgotla ? at workplace? at school ?	<table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td></td><td style="text-align: right;">YES</td><td style="text-align: right;">NO</td></tr> <tr> <td>AT CHURCH</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td></tr> <tr> <td>KGOTLA/PUBLIC MEETINGS.....</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td></tr> <tr> <td>AT WORKPLACE.....</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td></tr> <tr> <td>AT PRIMARY SCHOOL</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td></tr> <tr> <td>AT SECONDARY SCHOOL.....</td><td style="text-align: right;">1</td><td style="text-align: right;">2</td></tr> </table>		YES	NO	AT CHURCH	1	2	KGOTLA/PUBLIC MEETINGS.....	1	2	AT WORKPLACE.....	1	2	AT PRIMARY SCHOOL	1	2	AT SECONDARY SCHOOL.....	1	2							
	YES	NO																									
AT CHURCH	1	2																									
KGOTLA/PUBLIC MEETINGS.....	1	2																									
AT WORKPLACE.....	1	2																									
AT PRIMARY SCHOOL	1	2																									
AT SECONDARY SCHOOL.....	1	2																									

SECTION 4: FERTILITY PREFERENCES (ALL MALES 12 - 49 YEARS)

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP
401	CHECK 111: CURRENTLY MARRIED /LIVING TOGETHER?	YES..... 1 NO..... 2	→ 414
402	CHECK 303: MAN STERILIZED..... MAN NOT STERILIZED.....	1 2	→ 408
403	Is your wife /partner currently pregnant?	YES..... 1 NO 2 DON'T KNOW..... 9	→ 406
404	NOW I HAVE SOME QUESTIONS ABOUT YOUR FUTURE PLANS. Would you like to have a (another) child or would you prefer not to have any more children?	HAVE A (ANOTHER) CHILD..... 1 NO MORE/NONE..... 2 COUPLE INFECUND..... 3 WIFE /PARTNER(S) STERILIZED... .. 4 UNDECIDED..... 5	→ 408
405	How long would you like to wait from now before the birth of a (another) child?	MONTHS..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> YEARS..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	→ THEN GO TO 408
406	After the child your wife/ partner is expecting, would you like to have another child or would you prefer not to have any (more) children?	HAVE A (ANOTHER) CHILD..... 1 NO MORE CHILDREN..... 2 UNDECIDED..... 3	→ 408
407	How long would you like to wait from now before the birth of a/another child?	MONTHS..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> YEARS..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	
408	CHECK 202 AND 203: HAS LIVING CHILDREN .....1 NO LIVING CHILDREN.....2 NOT APPLICABLE.....3		→ 410 → 410
409	If you could go back to the time before you had any children and could choose exactly the number of children to have in your whole life, how many would that be ?	NUMBER..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> ANY NUMBER..... 96	→ 411 → 412
410	If you could choose exactly the number of children to have in your whole life, how many would that be ?	NUMBER..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> ANY NUMBER..... 96	→ 412
411	How many of these children would you like to be boys, how many would you like to be girls and for how many would the sex not matter?	BOYS GIRLS EITHER NUMBER <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>	

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP
412	Does your wife/partner approve or disapprove of couples using a method to avoid pregnancy ?	APPROVES..... 1 DISAPPROVES..... 2 NOT SURE..... 3	
413	How often have you talked to your wife/partner about this subject in the past year ?	NEVER..... 1 ONCE OR TWICE..... 2 MORE OFTEN..... 3	
414	Do you approve or disapprove of couples using a method to avoid pregnancy ?	APPROVES..... 1 DISAPPROVES..... 2 NOT SURE..... 3	
415	Do you approve or disapprove of premarital sexual involvement ?	APPROVES..... 1 DISAPPROVES..... 2 NOT SURE..... 3	
416	Do you approve or disapprove of the idea of providing unmarried, sexually active teenagers with contraceptive methods if they want them?	APPROVES..... 1 DISAPPROVES..... 2 NOT SURE..... 3	
417	For how long should a couple wait before starting sexual intercourse after the birth of a baby ?	MONTHS..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> YEARS..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> DON'T KNOW..... 99	
418	For how long should a breastfeeding mother wait before starting to have sexual relations again?	MONTHS..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> YEARS..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> DON'T KNOW..... 99	

SECTION 5: WIFE/ PARTNER'S BACKGROUND (MEN 12 - 49 YEARS)

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP
501	LOOK AT 111 AND CIRCLE AS APPROPRIATE: CURRENTLY MARRIED / LIVING TOGETHER? ASK QUESTIONS ABOUT WIFE /PARTNER.	YES..... 1 NO..... 2	→ 509
502	Did your wife/partner ever attend school ?	YES..... 1 NO..... 2	→ 504
503	What is the highest level she attained at school?	PRIMARY..... 1 SECONDARY..... 2 HIGHER..... 3 NON-FORMAL..... 4 NON-STANDARD CURRICULUM..... 5	
504	According to your knowledge, does your wife/partner work for payment or is self-employed?	YES, AS AN EMPLOYEE..... 1 YES, FOR SELF..... 2 NO..... 3	→ 506
505	Then what does your wife/ partner do regularly?	UNPAID FAMILY HELPER IN BUSINESS 1 WORK AT OWN LANDS/CATTLEPOST..... 2 ACTIVELY SEEKING WORK..... 3 HOUSEWORK..... 4 STUDENT..... 5 RETIRED..... 6 OTHER _____ (SPECIFY)	→ 507
506	What type of work does your wife/ partner do ? (Use two or more words to describe occupation)	_____	
507	Before you married/live with your wife/partner, did you yourself ever have a business of your own or did you ever work for someone else for a regular wage or payment in kind?	YES..... 1 NO..... 2	
508	Since you got married to your wife/ partner, have you ever owned a business or worked for someone else for a regular wage or payment in kind ?	YES..... 1 NO..... 2	
509	CHECK 202: LIVING WITH CHILDREN?	YES..... 1 NO..... 2 NOT APPLICABLE..... 3	→ 514 → 514
510	Do you have children less than 15 years old?	YES..... 1 NO..... 2	→ 512

NO.	QUESTIONS AND FILTERS	CODING CATEGORIES	SKIP																																				
511	Who usually cares for your child(ren) while you are away from home?	MYSELF. (take them with me) 01 WIFE/PARTNER..... 02 RESPONDENT'S PARENTS..... 03 WIFE'S/PARTNER'S PARENTS..... 04 OLDER CHILDREN 05 OTHER RELATIVES..... 06 FRIENDS..... 07 SERVANTS..... 08 NO ONE/THEMSELVES..... 09 DAY CARE CENTRE/ PRE-SCHOOL..... 10 OTHER _____ (SPECIFY)																																					
512	Do you receive any support for your child(ren) from: READ OUT RESPONSES	<table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th></th><th>YES</th><th>NO</th><th>DEAD</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MOTHER OF THE CHILDREN..... 1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>RESPONDENT'S FATHER..... 1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>RESPONDENT'S MOTHER..... 1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>OTHER MATERNAL RELATIVES..... 1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>MATERNAL GRANDPARENTS..... 1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>OTHER PATERNAL RELATIVES..... 1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>OTHER.....</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>(SPECIFY)</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table>		YES	NO	DEAD	MOTHER OF THE CHILDREN..... 1	2	3		RESPONDENT'S FATHER..... 1	2	3		RESPONDENT'S MOTHER..... 1	2	3		OTHER MATERNAL RELATIVES..... 1	2	3		MATERNAL GRANDPARENTS..... 1	2	3		OTHER PATERNAL RELATIVES..... 1	2	3		OTHER.....				(SPECIFY)				
	YES	NO	DEAD																																				
MOTHER OF THE CHILDREN..... 1	2	3																																					
RESPONDENT'S FATHER..... 1	2	3																																					
RESPONDENT'S MOTHER..... 1	2	3																																					
OTHER MATERNAL RELATIVES..... 1	2	3																																					
MATERNAL GRANDPARENTS..... 1	2	3																																					
OTHER PATERNAL RELATIVES..... 1	2	3																																					
OTHER.....																																							
(SPECIFY)																																							
513	Do you presently receive child support through the Affiliation Act?	YES..... 1 NO..... 2																																					
514	PRESENCE OF OTHERS AT THIS POINT. Circle type of persons present during this interview	<table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th></th><th>YES</th><th>NO</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CHILDREN UNDER 10..... 1</td><td>2</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>WIFE/ PARTNER..... 1</td><td>2</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>OTHER MALES..... 1</td><td>2</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>OTHER FEMALES..... 1</td><td>2</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table>		YES	NO	CHILDREN UNDER 10..... 1	2		WIFE/ PARTNER..... 1	2		OTHER MALES..... 1	2		OTHER FEMALES..... 1	2																							
	YES	NO																																					
CHILDREN UNDER 10..... 1	2																																						
WIFE/ PARTNER..... 1	2																																						
OTHER MALES..... 1	2																																						
OTHER FEMALES..... 1	2																																						
	RECORD THE TIME AT THE END OF INTERVIEW	Hour..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Minutes..... <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>																																					